

**Bachelor of Arts  
(B.A.)**

**BA-ENGC 101**

**English-Compulsory**



**Directorate of Distance Education  
Guru Jambheshwar University of  
Science & Technology  
HISAR-125001**



## CONTENTS

No.	Title	Author	Editor	Page /s
<b>Literature and Language-I (ENGC101)</b>				
1	Speech Sound	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	6
2	a)Choosing Our Universe b)Are Dams the temples of Modern India? Author-Arundhati Roy	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	28 46
3	The Generation Gap	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	69
4	Language and National Identity	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	85
5	a)Wounded Plants Author- Jagadish Chandra Bose b) Playing the English Gentleman	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	106 125
6	Great Books Born out of Great Minds	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	146
7	a)The Responsibility of Young Men b)Author-Lal Bahadur Shastri Bharat Mata Author- Jawaharlal Nehru	Dr.NutanYadav	Dr.NutanYadav	161 173



### Grammar Section

Comment [g1]: Grammar

No.	Title	Author	Editor	Page
1	Grammar: Noun and Pronoun	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	339
2	Verbs and Adverbs	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	352
3	Adjectives and Prepositions	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	372
4	Modals and Conjunctions.	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	401
5	Grammar: Tenses and Voice	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	424
6	Narration (Direct and Indirect Speech) and Phrasal Verbs.	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	460
7	Comprehension: Candidates will be required to answer the questions that follow the passages taken from the prescribed textbooks. Candidate will be required to attempt both the passages.	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	493
8	Paragraph: Candidates will be required to write a paragraph 1	Dr Astha Gupta	Dr. Shakuntla Devi	518



	in about 200 words on any one out of the four.			
--	---	--	--	--



# **LITERATURE AND LANGUAGE-I**



<b>Subject: English ( Compulsory)</b>	
<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:01</b>	<b>Editor: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Speech Sound</b>	

Comment [g2]: done

## Lesson Structure

### 1.1 Learning Objectives

### 1.2 Introduction

### 1.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 1.3.1 What is a speech sound?

#### 1.3.2 What is a vowel?

#### 1.3.3 What is a consonant?

### 1.4 Further Body of the text

#### 1.4.1 Phonemes

#### 1.4.2 Pure vowels

#### 1.4.3 Vowel sound symbols

#### 1.4.4 Consonant sound symbols

#### 1.4.5 Pronunciations of the letters of the English alphabets

### 1.5 Check your Progress

### 1.6 Summary

### 1.7 Keywords

### 1.8 Self -Assessment Questions (SAQs)



## 1.9 Answers to Your Progress

## 1.10 References/ Suggested Readings

### 1.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

### 1.2 INTRODUCTION

Sounds play a very important role in a language. It is the way how we express ourselves. Students need to know the sound structure of a language.

### 1.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

#### 1.3.1 What is a speech sound?

The English alphabet contains 26 letters which are divided into vowels and consonants. There is no one to one correspondence between spellings and sounds. It is that these 26 letters of the English alphabet along with some other symbols, represent 44 English speech sounds. Due to these 44 sounds, the letters of the alphabets in English don't always correspond to the same speech sound. For example, 'gh' is pronounced differently in Laugh, ghost, through. The International Phonetic Association (IPA) has evolved to overcome this problem.

Phonetic transcription following the IPA makes it possible for us to understand the correct pronunciation of words through dictionaries.

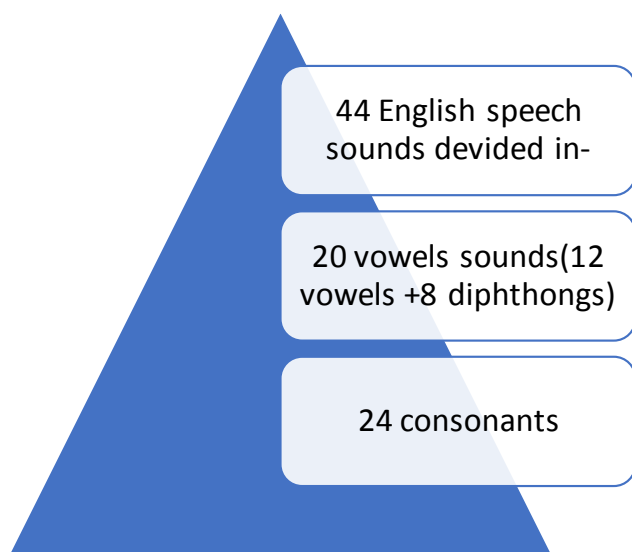
#### 1.3.2 Phonetic Transcription



It is the visual representation of speech sounds following the international Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), which is used extensively by phoneticians all over the world.

According to IPA

The 44 speech sounds of English are divided into 20 vowels and 24 consonants.



### 1.3.3- What is a vowel?

A vowel is a speech of sound in the production of which the air comes out of the mouth without any obstruction at all.

### 1.3.4 What is a consonant?

A consonant is a speech sound in the production of which there is some hindrance to the airstream at some point in the mouth.

All these 44 sounds are phonemes.

## 1.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT

### 1.4.1 Phonemes





A phoneme is the smallest possible sound unit which is combined with other phonemes to form meaningful units such as words.

Two words can differ in meaning through the contrast of a single phoneme. For example-

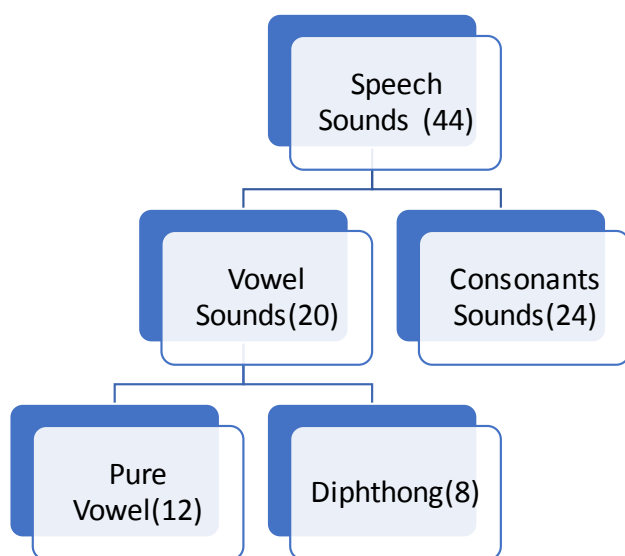
Tail- Fail

Kiss- Kill

Rat- Cat

Hit- Heat

**Speech sounds can be understood easily through this diagram**



#### 1.4.2 Pure Vowel

A pure vowel is that vowel in which only one sound is made for example - a, e, I, o, u, etc.

Diphthongs- A diphthong is a vowel in which two vowel sounds are heard. (ai),

It is the mixture of two vowel sounds e.g. - night



Hence, a diphthong means double so

### 1.4.3 Vowel sound symbols

IPA	Examples
ʌ	C <u>U</u> P, L <u>U</u> CK
ɑ:	<u>A</u> RM, F <u>A</u> THER
ɑ	C <u>A</u> T, B <u>L</u> ACK
e	M <u>E</u> T, B <u>E</u> D
ə	<u>A</u> WAY, C <u>I</u> N <u>E</u> M <u>A</u>
ɜ:ʳ	T <u>U</u> RN, L <u>E</u> ARN
ɪ	H <u>I</u> T, S <u>I</u> T <u>T</u> I <u>N</u> G
i:	S <u>E</u> E, H <u>E</u> A <u>T</u>
ɒ	H <u>O</u> T, R <u>O</u> CK
ɔ:	C <u>A</u> LL, F <u>O</u> UR
ʊ	P <u>U</u> T, C <u>O</u> U <u>L</u> D
u:	B <u>L</u> U <u>E</u> , F <u>O</u> U <u>D</u>
Diphthongs	
Ai	F <u>I</u> VE, <u>E</u> Y <u>E</u>
aʊ	N <u>O</u> W, <u>O</u> U <u>T</u>
eɪ	S <u>A</u> Y, <u>E</u> I <u>G</u> H <u>T</u>



IPA	Examples
oʊ	GO <u>U</u> , HO <u>M</u> E
ɔɪ	BO <u>Y</u> , JO <u>I</u> N
eəʔ	W <u>H</u> ERE, <u>A</u> IR
ɪəʔ	NE <u>A</u> R, HE <u>R</u> E
ʊəʔ	P <u>U</u> RE, TO <u>U</u> RIST

#### 1.4.4 Consonants Sound symbols

Consonants		
IPA	Examples	listen
b	<u>B</u> AD, LA <u>B</u>	
d	<u>D</u> ID, LA <u>D</u> Y	
f	<u>F</u> IND, I <u>F</u>	
g	<u>G</u> IVE, FLA <u>G</u>	
h	<u>H</u> OW, <u>H</u> ELLO	
j	<u>Y</u> ES, <u>Y</u> ELLOW	
k	<u>C</u> AT, BA <u>C</u> K	
l	<u>L</u> EG, <u>L</u> ITT <u>L</u> E	
m	<u>M</u> AN, LEM <u>O</u> N	



## Consonants

## IPA Examples

## listen

n NO, TENŋ SING, FINGERp PET, MAPr RED, TRYs SUN, MISSʃ SHE, CRASHt TEA, GETTINGtʃ CHECK, CHURCHθ THINK, BOTHð THIS, MOTHERv VOICE, FIVEw WET, WINDOWz ZOO, LAZYʒ PLEASURE, VISIONdʒ JUST, LARGE

- Vowels- in phonetics, a vowel is a sound in spoken language that is pronounced with an open vocal tract.



- Diphthongs –A diphthong is a gliding vowel in the articulation of which there is a transition of sound from one vowel position to another.
- Consonant- a consonant is a sound in spoken language that is articulated with the complete or partial closure of the vocal tract. For example, to pronounce /m/ one has to press one's lips together; /t/ is pronounced using the front of the tongue; /k/ is pronounced using the back of the tongue.

#### **1.4.5 Pronunciation of the letters of the English Alphabet**

The first letter of the English alphabet 'A' the 'I', is pronounced as /e/. The IPA transcriptions of the pronunciations of all the letters of the English alphabet are listed below.

Syllable-syllables are the units into which a word is divided. Each unit consists of a vowel sound and usually one or more consonants. The syllabus may be 'stressed' strong form (when spoken with emphasis) and 'unstressed' /weak form (when spoken without emphasis)

The number of a syllable in a word maybe one or more i.e, monosyllabic or polysyllabic.

Example of words containing one syllable:

- Late
- Bat
- Cheese
- Cake
- Door
- Eat

Example of words containing two syllables:

- Walking
- Chicken



- Father
- Waited
- Teacher
- Enter

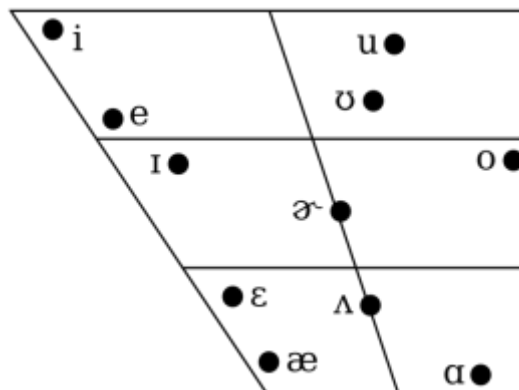
Examples of words containing three syllables:

- Editor
- Reminder
- Camera
- Interrupt
- Syllable

The letter 'y' can be counted as a vowel or a diphthong if it creates the sound of a vowel or a diphthong: e.g. ready, try, dry, etc.

### 1.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Transcribe these words-



**Vowel sound phonetic diagram**



i:	ɪ	ʊ	u:
sheep	ship	good	shoot
e	ə	ɜ:	ɔ:
bed	teacher	bird	door
æ	ʌ	ɑ:	ɒ
cat	up	far	on

### Phonetic Symbols

#### Vowel Sounds

cat, fat, rat

bed, ten, pen

teacher, feather, about

the ship, sit, fit

got, cot, on

cup, bus, much

good, full, foot

far, car, father

bird, curd, dirty

sheep, reap, deep

saw, flaw, call



shoot, pool, cool

### Diphthong Sounds

Iə here	eɪ wait	
ʊə tourist	ɔɪ boy	əʊ show
eə hair	aɪ my	aʊ cow

### Phonetic Symbols of Diphthongs

#### Diphthongs-

my, fly, die

cow, bow, now

wait, straight, late

the show, slow, go

here, fear, near

boy, joy, joy

pure, sure, cure

hair, bare, care





TeachingEnglish

vowels				diphthongs		
i:	ɪ	ʊ	u:	ɪə	eə	
e	ə	ɜ:	ɔ:	əʊ	aʊ	
æ	ʌ	a:	ɒ	eɪ	aɪ	ɔɪ

consonants							
p	f	t	θ	tʃ	s	ʃ	k
b	v	d	ð	dʒ	z	ʒ	g
h	m	n	ŋ	r	l	w	j

© British Council <http://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>

### Phonetic symbols of Vowels, Diphthongs, and consonants in the English Language

#### Consonants Sounds-



IPA: English Consonants	
IPA	Examples
p	pen, spin, tip
b	but, web
t	two, sting, bet
d	do, odd
tʃ	chair, nature, teach
dʒ	gin, joy, edge
k	cat, kill, skin, queen, thick
g	go, get, beg
f	fool, enough, leaf
v	voice, have
θ	thing, teeth
ð	this, breathe, father
s	see, city, pass
z	zoo, rose
ʃ	she, sure, emotion, leash
ʒ	pleasure, beige
h	ham
m	man, ham
n	no, tin
ŋ	singer, ring
l	left, bell
r	run, very
w	we
j	yes
ʌ	what

### Transcribe Words

pe a, pe t, po le

bo at, be ll, ba t



ten, tell, tea

dog, doctor, door

chain, cheese

June, joker, jet

car, kettle, character

go, gold, get

fly, feather, fun

video, van, vine

think, thunder, throw

this, that, them

see, sell, soap

zoo, zebra, zone

shall, shoe, shame

vision, measure, television

man, more, make

now, never, new

sing, song, thing

hat, hello, hair

love, labor, lost

red, rose, rope

wet, well, watch

## **1.6 SUMMARY**



The English alphabet contains 26 letters which are divided into vowels and consonants. There is no one to one correspondence between spellings and sounds. It is that these 26 letters of the English alphabet along with some other symbols, represent 44 sounds or English speech sounds. Due to these 44 sounds, the letters of the alphabets in English don't always correspond to the same speech sound. For example, gh is pronounced differently in Laugh, ghost, through. The International Phonetic Association (IPA) has evolved to overcome this problem.

- Phonetic transcription following the IPA makes it possible for us to understand the correct pronunciation of words through dictionaries. Vowels- in phonetics, a vowel is a sound in spoken language that is pronounced with an open vocal tract.
- Diphthongs –A diphthong is a gliding vowel in the articulation of which there is a transition of sound from one vowel position to another.
- Consonant- a consonant is a sound in spoken language that is articulated with a complete or partial closure of the vocal tract. For example, to pronounce /m/ one has to press one's lips together; /t/ is pronounced using the front of the tongue; /k/ is pronounced using the back of the tongue.

### **1.7 KEYWORDS**

- Phonemic
- Syllabus
- Transcription
- Consonant
- Vowel
- Diphthong
- IPA(International Phonetic Alphabet)

### **1.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS(SAQ'S)**

**Answer the following questions**



- What is speech sound?
- How many vowel sound we have in English?
- What is a diphthong? How many diphthongs we have in English?
- What is the phonetic Transcription?
- What is a phoneme?
- What is a syllable?

### **1.9 ANSWER TO YOUR PROGRESS**

#### **Answer 1-**

The English alphabet contains 26 letters which are divided into vowels and consonants. There is no one to one correspondence between spellings and sounds. It is that these 26 letters of the English alphabet along with some other symbols, represent 44 sounds or English speech sounds. Due to these 44 sounds, the letters of the alphabets in English don't always correspond to the same speech sound. For example, gh is pronounced differently in Laugh, ghost, through.

#### **Answer 2**

There are 12 vowel sounds we have in the English language.

#### **Answer 3**

A diphthong is a gliding vowel in the articulation of which this is a transition of sound from one vowel position to another. There are 8 diphthong sounds in English.

#### **Answer-4**

It is the visual representation of speech sounds following the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), which is used extensively by phoneticians all over the world. According to IPA, the 44 speech sounds of English are divided into 20 vowels and 24 consonants.

#### **Answer-5**



A phoneme is the smallest possible sound unit which is combined with other phonemes to form meaningful units such as words

**Answer-6**

Syllables are the units into which a word is divided. Each unit consists of a vowel sound and usually one or more consonants. The syllabus may be 'stressed' strong form (when spoken with emphasis) and 'unstressed'/weak form (when spoken without emphasis)

**List of common words for phonetic transcription**

a, about, above, across, act, active, activity, add, afraid, after, again, age, ago, agree,  
air, all,

along, already, always, am, amount, an, and, angry, another, answer, any, anyone, a  
nything,

anytime, appear, apple, are, area, arm, army, around, arrive, art, as, ask, at, attack,  
aunt, autumn,

**B**

baby, base, back, bad, bag, ball, bank, basket, bath, be, bean, bear, beautiful, beer,  
bed, bedroom, behave, before, begin, behind, bell, below, besides, best, better, betwe  
en, big, bird, birth, birthday, bit, bite, black, bleed, block, blood, blow, blue, board, b  
oat, body, boil, bone, book, border,

, borrow, both, bottle, bottom, bowl, box, boy, branch, brave, bread, bread, breakfast  
, breathe, bridge, bright, bring, brother, brown, brush, build, burn, business, busy, b  
usy, but, buy, by.

**C**

cake, call, can, candle, cap, car, card, care, careful, careless, carry, case, cat, catch,  
central, century, certain, chair, chance, change, chase, cheap, cheese, chicken, child



, children, chocolate, choice, choose, circle, city, class, clever, clean, clear, climb, clock, cloth, clothes, cloud, cloudy, close, coffee, coat, coin, cold, collect, color, comb, come, comfortable, common, compare, complete, computer, condition, continue, control, cook, cool, copper, corn, corner, correct, cost, contain, count, country, course, cove  
r, crash, cross, cry, cup, cupboard, cut.

**D**

dance, dangerous, dark, daughter, day, dead, decide, decrease, deep, deer, depend, desk, destroy, develop, die, different, difficult, dinner, direction, dirty, discover, dish, do, dog, door, double, down, draw, dream, dress, drink, drive, drop, dry, duck, dust, duty.

**E**

each, ear, early, earn, earth, east, easy, eat, education, effect, egg, eight, either, electric, elephant, else, empty, end, enemy, enjoy, enough, enter, equal, entrance, escape, even, evening, event, ever, every, everyone, exact, everybody, examination, example, except, excited, exercise, expect.

**F**

face, fact, fail, fall, false, family, famous, far, farm, father, fast, fast, fault, fear, feed, feel, female, fever, few, fight, fill, film, fine, fine, finger, finish, fire, first, fit, five, fix, flat, float, floor, flour, flower, fly, fold, fold, fool, foot, football, for, force, foreign, forest, forget, forgive, fork, form, fox, four, free, freedom, freeze, fresh, friend, friendly, from, front, fruit, full, fun, funny, furniture, further, future.

**G**

the

game, garden, gate, general, gentleman, get, gift, give, glad, glass, go, goat, god, gold, good, goodbye, grandfather, grandmother, grass, grave, great, green, grey, ground, group, grow, gun.

**H**

hair, half, hall, hammer, hand, happen, happy, hard, hate, hate, have, he, head, heal, thy, hear, heavy, hello, help, heart, heaven, height, help, hen, her, here, hers, hide, high, hill, him, his, hit, hobby, hold, hole, holiday, home, hope, horse, hospital, hot, hotel, house, how, hundred, hungry, hour, hurry, husband, hurt

**I**

I, ice, idea, if, important, in, increase, inside, into, introduce, invent, the iron, invite, is, island, it, its.

**J**

jelly, job, join, juice, jump, just.

**K**

keep, key, kill, kind, king, kitchen, knee, knife, knock, know.

**L**

ladder, lady, lamp, land, large, last, late, late, laugh, lazy, lead, leaf, learn, leave, leg, left, lend, length, less, lesson, let, letter, library, lie, life, light, like, lion, lip, list, listen, little, live, lock, lonely, long, look, lose, lot, love, low, lower, luck.

**M**

machine, main, make, male, man, many, map, mark, markets, marry, matter, may, me, meal, mean, measure, meat, medicine, meet, member, mention, method, middle, milk, million, mind, minute, miss, mistake, mix, model, modern, moment, money, monkey, month, moon, more, morning, most, mother, mountain, mouth, move, much, music, must, my.

**N**

name, narrow, nation, nature, near, nearly, neck, need, needle, neighbor, neither, ne





t, never, new, news, newspaper, next, nice, night, nine, no, noble, noise, none, nor, n  
orth, nose, not, nothing, notice, now, number.

**O**

obey, object, ocean, of, off, offer, office, often, oil, old, on, one, only, open, opposite, o  
r, orange, order, other, our, out, outside, over, own.

**P**

page, pain, paint, pair, pan, paper, parent, park, part, partner, party, pass, past, pat  
h, pay, peace, pen, pencil, people, pepper, per, perfect, period, person, petrol, photog  
raph, piano, pick, picture, piece, pig, pin, pink, place, plane, plant, plastic, plate, pla  
y, please, pleased, plenty, pocket, point, poison, police, polite, pool, poor, popular, po  
sition, possible, potato, pour, power, present, press, pretty, prevent, price, prince, pri  
son, private, prize, probably, problem, produce, promise, proper, protect, provide, pu  
blic, pull, punish, pupil, push, put.

**Q**

queen, question, quick, quiet, quiet.

**R**

radio, rain, rainy, raise, reach, read, ready, real, receive, record, red, remember, remi  
nd, remove, rent, repair, repeat, reply, report, rest, restaurant, result, return, rice, ri  
ch, ride, right, ring, rise, road, rob, rock, room, round, rubber, rude, rule, ruler, run,  
rush.

**S**

sad, safe, sail, salt, same, sand, save, say, school, science, scissors, search, seat, sec  
ond, see, seem, sell, send, sentence, serve, seven, several, sex, shade, shadow, shake  
, shape, share, sharp, she, sheep, sheet, shelf, shine, ship, shirt, shoe, shoot, shop, s  
hort, should, shoulder, shout, show, sick, side, signal, silence, silly, silver, similar, si



mple, single, since, sing, sink, sister, sit, six, size, skill, skin, skirt, sky, sleep, slip, slow, smoke, small, smell, smile, smoke, snow, so, soap, sock, soft, some, someone, something, sometimes, son, soon, sorry, sound, soup, south, space, speak, special, speed, spell, spend, spoon, sport, spread, spring, square, stamp, stand, star, start, station, stay, steal, steam, step, still, stomach, stone, stop, store, storm, story, strange, street, strong, structure, student, study, stupid, subject, substance, successful, such, sudden, sugar, suitable, summer, sun, sunny, support, sure, surprise, sweet, swim, sword.

**T**

table, take, talk, tall, taste, taxi, tea, teach, team, tear, telephone, television, tell, ten, tennis, terrible, test, then, that, the, their, then, there, therefore, these, thick, thin, thing, think, third, this, though, threat, three, tidy, tie, title, too, today, toe, together, tomorrow, tonight, too, tool, tooth, top, total, touch, town, train, tram, travel, tree, trouble, true, trust, twice, try, turn, type.

**U**

uncle, under, understand, unit, until, up, use, useful, usual, usually.

**V**

vegetable, very, village, voice, visit.

**W**

wait, wake, walk, want, warm, wash, waste, watch, water, way, we, weak, wear, weather, wedding, week, weight, welcome, well, west, wet, what, wheel, when, where, which, while, white, who, why, wide, wide, wild, will, win, win, window, wine, winter, wire, wise, wish, wish, without, woman, wonder, word, work, world, worry, worst, write, wrong

**Y**



year, yes, yesterday, yet, you, young, your.

**Z**

zero, zoo

**1.10 REFERENCES /SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Michael Rosen (2015). *Alphabetical: How Every Letter Tells a Story*. Counterpoint. ISBN 978-1619027022.
- Upward, Christopher; Davidson, George (2011), *The History of English Spelling*, Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell, ISBN 978-1-4051-9024-4, LCCN 2011008794.



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:02</b>	
<b>Chapter-2(a) Choosing Our Universe</b> <b>Author-Stephen Hawking and Leonard Mlodinow</b> <b>Chapter -2(b) Are Dams the Temple of Modern India?</b> <b>Author –Arundhati Roy</b>	

**Lesson Structure****2.1 Learning Objectives****2.2 Introduction****2.3 Main Body of the Text****2.3.1 About the Author****2.3.2 About the Essay****2.4 Further Body of the text****2.5 Check your Progress****2.6 Summary****2.7 Keywords****2.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****2.8.1 Language Activity****2.9 Answers to Your Progress****2.9.1 Extented Composition****2.10 References/ Suggested Readings**



## 2.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

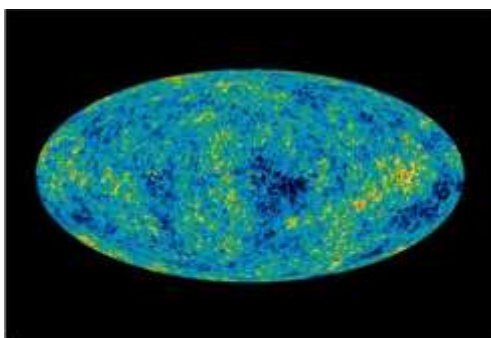
After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

## 2.2 INTRODUCTION

The essay 'Choosing Our Universe' is an excerpt from The Grand Design, a collective book by Stephen Hawking and Leonard Mlodinow. It offers a thought-provoking and innovative approach towards understanding the universe. The laws of Physics have helped us get answers to a lot many puzzles related to the cosmos. The Theory of Relativity and Quantum Physics together have helped unravel many deep mysteries about the universe. However, the quest to arrive at a single unified theory that will explain everything still evades us

## 2.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT



**The Microwave Background** This picture of the sky was created from seven years of WMAP data released in 2010. It reveals temperature fluctuations—shown as color differences—dating back 13.7 billion years. The fluctuations pictured correspond to temperature differences of less than a thousandth of a degree on the Centigrade scale. Yet they were the seeds that grew to become the galaxies. Credit: NASA/WMAP Science Team.



ACCORDING TO THE BOSHONGO PEOPLE of central Africa, in the beginning, there was only darkness, water, and the great god Bumba. One day Bumba, in pain from a stomachache, vomited up the sun. In time the sun dried up some of the water, leaving land. But Bumba was still in pain and vomited some more. Up came the moon, the stars, and then some animals: the leopard, the crocodile, the turtle, and finally man. The Mayans of Mexico and Central America tell of a similar time before creation when all that existed were the sea, the sky, and the Maker. In the Mayan legend the Maker, unhappy because there was no one to praise him, created the earth, mountains, trees, and most animals. But the animals could not speak, and so he decided to create humans. First, he made them of mud and earth, but they only spoke nonsense. He let them dissolve away and tried again, this time fashioning people from wood. Those people were dull. He decided to destroy them, but they escaped into the forest, sustaining damage along the way that altered them slightly, creating what we today know as monkeys. After that fiasco, the Maker finally came upon a formula that worked and constructed the first humans from white and yellow corn. Today we make ethanol from corn, but so far haven't matched the Maker's feat of constructing the people who drink it.

Creation myths like these all attempt to answer the questions we address in this book: Why is there a universe, and why is the universe the way it is? Our ability to address such questions has grown steadily in the centuries since the ancient Greeks, most profoundly over the past century. Armed with the background of the previous chapters, we are now ready to offer a possible answer to these questions.

One thing that may have been apparent even in early times was that either the universe was a very recent creation or else human beings have existed for only a small fraction of cosmic history. That's because the human race has been improving so rapidly in knowledge and technology that if people had been around for millions of years, the human race would be much further along in its mastery.



According to the Old Testament, God created Adam and Eve only six days into creation. Bishop Ussher, primate of all Ireland from 1625 to 1656, placed the origin of the world even more precisely, at nine in the morning on October 27, 4004 BC. We take a different view: that humans are a recent creation but that the universe itself began much earlier, about 13.7 billion years ago.

The first actual scientific evidence that the universe had a beginning came in the 1920s. As we said in Chapter 3, that was a time when most scientists believed in a static universe that had always existed. The evidence to the contrary was indirect, based upon the observations Edwin Hubble made with the 100-inch telescope on Mount Wilson, in the hills above Pasadena, California. By analyzing the spectrum of light they emit, Hubble determined that nearly all galaxies are moving away from us, and the farther away they are, the faster they are moving. In 1929 he published a law relating their rate of recession to their distance from us and concluded that the universe is expanding. If that is true, then the universe must have been smaller in the past. If we extrapolate to the distant past, all the matter and energy in the universe would have been concentrated in a very tiny region of unimaginable density and temperature, and if we go back far enough, there would be a time when it all began—the event we now call the big bang.

### 2.3.1 About the Author



**Stephen William Hawking**



**Leonard Mlodinow**



Stephen William Hawking is an English theoretical physicist cosmologist author and Direct of the Research center at the University of Cambridge. He was the first to set forth a cosmology explained by a union of the general theory of relativity and quantum mechanics. He has achieved success with popular science. He is the author of 'A Brief History of Time' a phenomenal successful science book that explains a range of subjects related to cosmology. He has worked extensively on Black Holes. He suffered from a motor disease that has paralyzed him.

Leonard Mlodinow is a famous American physicist and screenwriter and scientist. As a child, he was interested in both mathematics and chemistry. He got a doctoral degree from the University of California. He did pioneering work on the quantum theory of Dielectric Media.

Between 2008 and 2010 Mlodinow worked on a book with Stephen Hawking entitled 'The Grand Design' from which this essay has been taken.

### **2.3.2 About the Essay**

This essay offers a new approach to understanding the universe. The laws of physics have helped us to get answers for a lot of many deep mysteries about the universe. However, the quest to arrive at a single unified theory that will explain everything still evades us; we still don't know exactly how this universe was formed. We don't know for certain how life originated on this earth.

(Stephen Hawking and Leonard Mlodinow)

### **2.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT**

1. According to the Boshongo people, in the beginning, there was only darkness, water, and the great God Bumba. Bumba was the god in the mythology of Central Africa. Those people believe that Bumba is the god of universe creation. One day due to pain in the stomach vomited up the sun. The Sundried up some of the water, leaving land. But God was still in pain, and





vomited some more and resulted in the moon, the stars, and then some animals: the leopard, crocodile, the turtle, and finally man.

2. The Mayan tube of Mexico and Central America tells of a similar time before creation where all that existed were the sea, the sky, and the maker. The maker was unhappy because there was no one to praise him, created the earth, mountains, trees, and most animals. But the animals could not speak, so he decides to create humans.

He first made human beings with mud and earth, but they only spoke nonsense. He let them dissolve and tried again. Then he made the people from the wood but those people were dull. He decided to destroy them but they escaped into the forest, creating what we today known as monkeys. Thus, in the beginning, God failed to make human beings. This is the fiasco (mistake) of the Maker.

According to the people of Mexico, God made the first humans from white and yellow corn. Sarcastically authors say that scientists make ethanol from corn but they have not been able to make men from it.

Now, these types of myths from various people and religion are helpful to answer the questions we address-

- Why is there a universe
- Why is the universe the way it is?

Our ability to address such questions has grown steadily in the centuries since the ancient Greeks most profoundly over the past century. We are now ready to offer a possible answer to these questions. It has been apparent even from the early time that either the universe was a very recent creation of the human beings have existed for only a small fraction of comic history. It is not very old.

According to the Old Testament God created Adam and Eve only six days into creation.



Bishop Usher believed that they originated at nine in the morning on October 27, 4004 BC. But the scientists have found out that the universe itself began much earlier about 13.7 billion years ago. But as compare to it, humans are a recent creation.

The first actual scientific evidence about the beginning of the universe came in the 1920s. In the beginning, most scientists believed in a static universe that had always existed. But Edwin Hubble in 1929 published a law relating their rate of recession to their distance from us. It was based upon the observation with the 100-inch telescope which he mounted on Mount Wilson, in the hills above Pasadena, California. He concluded that the universe is expanding. The universe must have been smaller in the past. If we extrapolate to the distant past, all the matter and the energy in the universe would have been concentrated in a very small region of unimaginable density and temperature and if we go back far enough there would be a time when it all began. The name given to the origin of the universe is the Big Bang. The Big Bang Theory is an effort to explain what happened at the very beginning of our universe. In the beginning, there was nothing. The big bang theory is an effort to explain what happened during and after that moment.

## **2.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**

**Answer the questions in 25-30 words**

1. Who was Bumba?
2. What is the joke that the authors make regarding ethanol?
3. What do you understand by the term 'Big Bang Theory'?

### **Answers**

1. Bumba was the god in the mythology of Central Africa. Those people believed that Bumba was the god of creation. In the beginning, there was only darkness, water, and the great god Bumba. The Bumba created the universe.



2. According to the people of Mexico, God made the first humans with white and yellow corn. The authors say that scientists make ethanol from corn, but they have not been able to make men from it.
3. The Big Bang Theory is an effort to explain what happened at the very beginning of our universe. In the beginning, there was nothing. The big bang theory is an effort to explain what happened during and after that moment.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

1. Discuss the relevance of this title.
2. What is the 'fiasco' which has been discussed in the chapter?
3. What do scriptures say about the origin of the universe?

**Answers**

1. This essay offers a new approach to understanding the universe. The laws of physics have helped us to get answers to a lot of many puzzles related to the cosmos. The Theory of Relativity and Quantum Physics together have helped unravel many deep mysteries about the universe. However, the quest to arrive at a single unified theory that will explain everything still evades us. We still do not know exactly how this universe was formed. We do not know for certain how life originated on this earth. That is why the title of this essay is relevant.
2. According to the Mayan tribe of Mexico, the Maker first made humans of mud and earth, but they only spoke nonsense. He let them dissolve away and tried again. This time, the Maker made people from wood. But he found that they were dull. He decided to destroy them. But they escaped in the forest, sustaining damage along the way that altered them slightly. They changed into monkeys. Thus, in the beginning, God failed to make human beings. This was the fiasco of the maker.
3. It has been apparent even from the early times that either the universe was a very recent creation of human beings have existed for only a small fraction of cosmic history. According to the Old Testament, God has created Adam and



Eve only 6 days into creation. Bishop Usher believes that the world originated at nine in the morning on October 27, 4004 BC. But the scientists have found out that the universe itself began much earlier, about 13.7 billion years ago. But as compared to it, humans are a recent creation.

### Comprehensive passages

#### Passage 1

In 1929 he published a law relating their rate of recession to their distance from us and concluded that the universe is expanding. If that is true, then the universe must have been smaller in the past. If we extrapolate to the distant past, all the matter and energy in the universe would have been concentrated in a very tiny region of unimaginable density and temperature, and if we go back far enough, there would be a time when it all began—the event we now call the big bang.

#### Questions-

1. Who published the law relating to the recession of the galaxies?
2. What did Hubble conclude?
3. What does the passage say about the universe?
4. What is the name given to the origin of the universe?

#### Answers-

1. In 1929, Hubble published a law relating their rate of recession to their distance from us.
2. He concluded that the universe is expanding.
3. The universe must have been smaller in the past.
4. The name given to the origin of the universe is the Big Bang.

#### Passage 2

The first actual scientific evidence that the universe had a beginning came in the 1920s. As we said in Chapter 3, that was a time when most scientists believed in a static universe that had always existed. The evidence to the



contrary was indirect, based upon the observations Edwin Hubble made with the 100-inch telescope on Mount Wilson, in the hills above Pasadena, California. By analyzing the spectrum of light they emit, Hubble determined that nearly all galaxies are moving away from us, and the farther away they are, the faster they are moving.

#### Questions-

1. When did the first actual scientific evidence come about at the beginning of the universe?
2. What did most scientists believe in the beginning?
3. What was the evidence to the contrary based on?
4. Where was Hubble's telescope mounted?

#### Answers

1. The first actual scientific evidence about the beginning of the universe came in the 1920s
2. In the beginning, most scientists believed in a static universe that had always existed.
3. The evidence to the contrary was indirect, based upon the observations made by Edwin Hubble with the 100- inch telescope.
4. It was mounted by Mount Wilson, in the hills above Pasadena, California.

#### Passage 3

According to the Old Testament, God created Adam and Eve only six days into creation. Bishop Ussher, primate of all Ireland from 1625 to 1656, placed the origin of the world even more precisely, at nine in the morning on October 27, 4004 BC. We take a different view: that humans are a recent creation but that the universe itself began much earlier, about 13.7 billion years ago.



Questions-

1. What does the Old Testament say about Adam and Eve?
2. Who were Adam and Eve?
3. When did the world originate according to Bishop Usher?
4. When did the universe begin, according to the scientists?

Answers-

1. According to the Old Testament, God created Adam and Eve only six days into creation.
2. Adam and Eve were the first ancestors of mankind.
3. According to him, the world originated at nine in the morning on October 27, 4004 BC.
4. According to scientists, the universe began about 13.7 billion years ago.

## 2.6 SUMMARY

### Word formation

#### Prefix and suffix

A prefix is a letter or a group of letters added to the beginning of a word to form a new word

For eg. Im-improve

Prove is a root word and Im is added as a prefix.

Here are some more words where the use of prefix changes the meaning of the root word-

Prefix	Root word	New word
Mis	Spell	Misspell
Dis	Satisfied	Dissatisfied



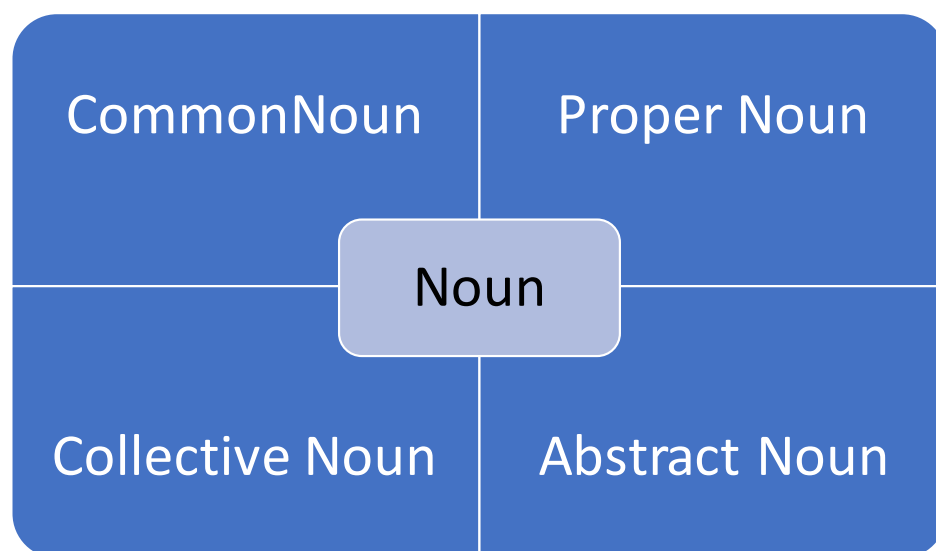
## 2.7 KEYWORDS

- Form words with the help of the following prefixes  
Anti-,dis-,un-,re- pre-
- Form words with the help of the following suffix.  
-ed,--iy,-less,-ing,-er
- Write down ten examples where the use of a prefix changes the meaning of the root word to produce the opposite meaning.

## 2.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS (SAQ'S)

### Language Activity

The noun- A noun is a word used to name a person, place, thing, quality, or action.



Common Noun	<b><i>A noun that donates any or all members of a class. (common here means general, unspecified categories)</i></b>
Proper	<i>A noun that donates a particular thing. It is the name of a</i>



Noun	<i>particular place or person. It is always written with a capital letter at the beginning to distinguish them from common nouns.</i>
collective Noun	<i>It is a noun that is singular in form but is used for a group of people or things. E.g. Team, Staff, Nation</i>
Abstract Noun	<i>It is a name used for things you cannot see or touch, such as a quality, an action, or a state. E.g. Goodness, Honesty, Cowardice etc.</i>

### 2.8.1 Language Activities

#### Form abstract noun from the following adjectives-

1. Broad.....
2. Brave.....
3. Wide.....
4. Happy.....
5. Novel.....
6. Ignorant.....

#### Form abstract noun from the following verbs-

1. Know.....
2. Please.....
3. Advise.....
4. Free.....
5. Believe.....
6. laugh.....
7. Success.....

#### Categories the noun is given below-





- Heath
- Team
- Soldier
- Verdict
- Bunch
- Rome
- Truth
- Chemistry
- Slave

## 2.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS

### Form abstract noun from the following adjectives-

1. Broad.....broadly
2. Brave.....bravery
3. Wide.....widely
4. Happy.....happiness
5. Novel.....novelty
6. Ignorant.....ignorance

### Form abstract noun from the following verbs-

7. Know.....knowledge
8. Please.....pleasure
9. Advise.....advice
10. Free.....freedom
11. Believe.....belief
12. laugh.....laughter.
13. Success.....successful

### Categorize the noun given below-

- a. Heath      common noun



- b. Team      collective noun
- c. Soldier   common noun
- d. Verdict    collective noun
- e. Bunch      collective noun
- f. Rome       proper noun
- g. Truth       abstract noun
- h. Chemistry   abstract noun

### Subject-verb agreement

In a sentence, the subject and the verb must agree in number and person.

Singular subjects take singular verbs and plural subjects take plural verbs.

Person	Helping verb	Present	past	Present perfect	Past perfect	Present negative	Past negative
<b>1<sup>st</sup> person</b>							
Singular	I	am	was	Have	had	don't	didn't
Plural	We	are	were	Have	had	don't	didn't
<b>2<sup>nd</sup> person</b>							
Singular/plural	You	are	were	Have	had	Don't	Didn't
<b>3<sup>rd</sup> person</b>							
Singular	He	is	was	Has	had	doesn't	didn't
	She	is	was	Has	had	doesn't	Didn't
	It	is	was	Has	had	doesn't	Didn't
	They	are	were	Have	had	don't	Didn't

The following table gives the various forms of simple present tense -

Simple Present	Negative	Interrogative
----------------	----------	---------------



I sing.	I do not sing.	Do I sing?
We sing.	We do not sing.	Do we sing?
You sing.	You do not sing.	Do you sing?
He/she sings.	He/she does not sing.	Does he/she sing?
They sing.	They do not sing.	Do they sing?

**Fill the blanks with the suitable forms of the verb 'be' (is, am, are)**

1. My mother is a teacher.
2. What is the latest score?
3. Shyam is very tall.
4. I am now 20 years tall. How old are you?
5. I am sure that you will pass.
6. Today is a holiday.
7. There are 7 days in a week.
8. Flour is made from wheat.
9. We are sorry to hear that you have not been well.

**Rewrite the following sentences into their negative and interrogative form-**

S.No.	Simple Sentence	Negative Form	Interrogative Form
1.	Ravi plays football.	Ravi does not play football.	Does Ravi play football?
2.	Kiran is a doctor.	Kiran is not a doctor.	Is Kiran a doctor?
3.	Mohit studies every day.	Mohit does not study every day.	Does Mohit study every day?
4.	Children enjoy their holidays.	Children do not enjoy the holidays.	Do children enjoy the holidays?



5.	My sister lives in Mumbai.	My sister does not live in Mumbai.	Does my sister live in Mumbai?
----	----------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------

### 2.9.1 Extended Composition

**Write an essay on preparing to go to the playground in about 150 words-**

Playgrounds are relaxing places to visit for people of all ages. They are important for children because their facilities allow children to develop their physical and mental abilities. Both newly constructed and renovated playgrounds today should incorporate theme-based options, such as a wet sand area, to encourage children to use their creativity. Playgrounds should also provide safety measures such as soft ground surfaces to reduce the risk of injury from accidents.

Through many years, playground has been a comfort place for people to visit. The playground in our communities are getting old, therefore we should renew our playground. I'm part of the playground planning community, and I have few ideas to improve our playground. There were many different types of playground; they were adventure playgrounds, creative playground, tot lots, mini parks, and theme park. The ideas of the playground will be build base on the satisfaction of the potential users. The design of the playground must be exciting and provide the developmental needs to the children. Safety is another important issue to construct a playground. The playground is available to many different people in different ages. The condition of the playground should be provided to the whole community.

### 2.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

- Michael Moorcock (2010-09-05). "Book review: 'The Grand Design' by Stephen Hawking and Leonard Mlodinow". Los Angeles Times. Retrieved 2010-09-03.
- Richard Allen Greene (2010-09-02). "Stephen Hawking: God didn't create the universe". CNN. Retrieved 2010-09-04.
- Nick Watt (2010). "Stephen Hawking: 'Science Makes God Unnecessary'". ABC News. Retrieved 2015-05-01.



- Laura Roberts (2010-09-02). "Stephen Hawking: God was not needed to create the Universe". The Telegraph. Retrieved 2015-05-01.

\*\*\*\*\*



Course Code: BA101	Author: Dr.NutanYadav
Lesson No:02	
b) Are Dams the temples of Modern India? Author-Arundhati Roy	

## 2.2 INTRODUCTION

### Are Dams the temples of modern India?

Human-made dams are important in our modern life. The concept behind dam-building includes water supply, electricity generation, flood control, recreation, and irrigation. But another question that arises in mind is - Are Dams favorable? Are Dam Fail or pass? This essay tries to answer these questions.

## 2.3 Main Body of the text

Original Text

*In the fifty years since Independence, after Nehru's famous "Dams are the Temples of Modern India" speech (one that he grew to regret in his lifetime), his footsoldiers threw themselves into the business of building dams with unnatural fervor. Dam-building grew to be equated with Nation-building. Their enthusiasm alone should have been reason enough to make one suspicious. Not only did they build new dams and new irrigation systems, but they also took control of small, traditional systems that had been managed by village communities for thousands of years, and allowed them to atrophy. To compensate for the loss, the Government built more and more dams. Big ones, little ones, tall ones, short ones. The result of its exertions is that India now boasts of being the world's third-largest dam builder. According to the Central Water Commission, we have three thousand six hundred dams that qualify as*



***Big Dams, three thousand three hundred of them built after Independence. One thousand more are under construction. Yet one-fifth of our population – 200 million people – does not have safe drinking water and two-thirds – 600 million – lack basic sanitation.***

Big dams started well, but have ended badly. There was a time when everybody loved them; everybody had them- the Communists, Capitalists, Christians, Muslims, Hindus, and Buddhists. There was a time when Big Dams moved men to poverty. Not any longer. All over the world, there is a movement growing against big dams. In the First World, they're being de-commissioned, blown up. The fact that they do more harm than good is no longer just conjecture. Big Dams are obsolete. They are uncool. They are undemocratic. They're a government's way of accumulating authority (deciding who will get how much water and who will grow what where). They are brazen means of taking water, land, and irrigation away from the poor and gifting it to the rich.

Their reservoirs displace huge populations of people leaving them homeless and destitute. Ecologically, they're in the doghouse. They lay the earth to waste. They cause floods, water-logging, salinity, they spread disease. There is mounting evidence that links Big Dams to earthquakes.

Big Dams haven't lived up to their role as the monuments of Modern Civilization, emblems of Man's ascendancy over Nature. Monuments are supposed to be timeless, but dams have an all too finite lifetime. They last only as long as it takes Nature to fill them with silt. It is common knowledge now that Big Dams do the opposite of what their Publicity People say they do- the Local Pain for National Gain myth has been a wide pen.

For all these reasons, the dam-building industry in the First World was troubled and out of work. So it is exported to the Third World in the name of Development Aid, along with their other waste like old weapons, superannuated aircraft carriers, and band pesticides.



### 2.3.1 About the Author-



Arundhati Roy

Suzanna Arundhati Roy is an Indian author best known for her novel 'The God of Small Things' which won the Man Booker prize for fiction in 1997 and became the bestselling book by a non-expatriate Indian author. She is also a political activist involved in human rights and environmental causes. She is also a relentless critic of government policies and actions that affect the environment, the poor, and the dispossessed. Her views on such issues have found expression in the Algebra of Infinite Justice, for which she was awarded the Sahitya Akademi Award in 2006. However, Roy declined the award protesting against the governmental policies.

### 2.3.2 About the Essay-

This essay is an excerpt from Arundhati Roy's (1961) 'The Algebra of Infinite Justice'. The book discusses various perspectives of global and local concerns. In this essay, she says that big dams are harmful to the environment. They have become obsolete. The advanced countries have stopped constructing big dams. These dams displace huge populations and make people homeless. They cause floods and spread diseases.

### 2.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT





Referring to Nehru's famous speech in which he said that the dams are the temples of modern India, Arundhati Roy advocates against the construction of big dams. She says that it is due to the love for construction of the dam at all times, big dams were constructed in India. Dam building was equated with nation-building. The followers of Nehru showed the same enthusiasm and sometimes it became suspicious. Not only they build new dams and new irrigation systems they took control of a small traditional system that village communities had managed for thousands of years and allowed them to weaken.

This resulted in a big loss, to compensate for the loss, the government built more and more dams and we had a large variety of dams- big, little, tall, short. The result of this love for dam building is that India now boasts of being the world's third-largest dam builder. According to the report of the Central Water Commission, we have 3600 dams that qualify as the big dams, 3300 of them built after independence. More than 1000 are under construction. Despite that 1/4<sup>th</sup> of our population (near about 200 million people) don't get safe drinking water and 2/3<sup>rd</sup> (600 million) lack sanitation.

The starting of dam building as well but it have ended badly there was a time when everybody loved them. They were for everyone- the communists, capitalists, Muslims, Christians, and Buddhists. Big dams moved men to poetry. But this ended very soon.

## 2.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**Answer the questions in 25-30 words**

1. Which speech of Jawaharlal Nehru is referred to in this essay?
2. Why did Nehru regret his statement about dams later in his life?
3. How did the government compensate for the loss caused by dam building?
4. Why have big dams become obsolete?
5. Why are big dams undemocratic?
6. How did big dams affect ecology?



7. How does the author present a contrast between monuments and big dams?

**Answers-**

1. At the beginning of the essay, the writer refers to a speech given by Nehru. In this speech, he said, "Dams are the temples of modern India".
2. In his speech, Nehru said, "Dams are the temples of modern India". But later it was found that dams were not as beneficial as they were thought to be. There were many bad effects of dams. So Nehru regretted his statement.
3. The dam-building had some side effects. They took control of small traditional irrigation systems of Indian villages. To compensate for that loss, the government built more dams.
4. There was a time when big dams were liked by people. But now it has been found that the big dams do more harm than good. So advanced countries have stopped building big dams. Thus big dams have become obsolete.
5. Big dams are undemocratic because they favor the rich more than the poor. They are the governmental way of accumulating authority. They are the means of taking water, land, and irrigation from the poor and giving it to the rich.
6. The big dams lay the earth to waste. They cause floods, waterlogging, and salinity. There is evidence that big dams are linked to earthquakes. In this way, the big dams affect the ecology.
7. Some people call big dams the monuments of modern civilization. But the author says that monuments are permanent. However, the big dams have a limited lifetime. In this way, the author compares monuments and big dams.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

1. 'There was a time when big dams moved men to poetry'. Explain this statement.
2. What are the dangers associated with the construction of big dams?

**Answers-**



1. When big dams were constructed for the first time, they looked very impressive. The water of a river was blocked and collected in a big reservoir. These reservoirs looked like big lakes. People were attracted towards them and responded to them as they reacted to the sea or the big lakes. The romantic people even wrote poems about them. That is why the author says that there was a time when the big dams moved men to poetry. But now the big dams have lost their charm.
2. The big dams have to create big reservoirs. These reservoirs displace people and make them homeless and destitute. The big dams affect the ecology. They lay the earth to waste. They cause floods, waterlogging, and salinity. There is evidence that big dams are linked to earthquakes. It has been found out that the big dams do more harm than good. So advanced countries have stopped building big dams. Big dams are undemocratic because they favor the rich more than the poor. They are the government's way of accumulating authority. They are the means of taking water, land, and irrigation from the poor and giving it to the rich.

### The comprehensive passage from the text

#### Passage 1

***“In the fifty years since Independence, after Nehru’s famous “Dams are the Temples of Modern India” speech (one that he grew to regret in his lifetime), his footsoldiers threw themselves into the business of building dams with unnatural fervor. Dam-building grew to be equated with Nation-building. Their enthusiasm alone should have been reason enough to make one suspicious. Not only did they build new dams and new irrigation systems, but they also took control of small, traditional systems that had been managed by village communities for thousands of years, and allowed them to atrophy***

#### Questions-



1. What did Nehru say about dams in his speech?
2. With what was dam-building equated?
3. What was the reason to make one suspicious?
4. What did the big dams do?

**Answers-**

1. Nehru said that dams were the temples of modern India.
2. Dam building was equated with nation-building.
3. The enthusiasm of Nehru's followers was the reason to make one suspicious.
4. The big dams took control of small, traditional systems that village communities had managed for thousands of years.

**Passage 2**

***To compensate for the loss, the Government built more and more dams. Big ones, little ones, tall ones, short ones. The result of its exertions is that India now boasts of being the world's third-largest dam builder. According to the Central Water Commission, we have three thousand six hundred dams that qualify as Big Dams, three thousand three hundred of them built after Independence. One thousand more are under construction. Yet one-fifth of our population – 200 million people – does not have safe drinking water and two-thirds – 600 million – lack basic sanitation.***

**Questions-**

1. What did the government do to compensate for the loss?
2. What is India's position in the world with regards to dams?
3. How many big dams are in India?
4. How many people of India do not have safe drinking water?

**Answers-**



1. To compensate for the loss, the government built more and more dams.
2. India is the world's third-largest dam- builder.
3. We have 3600 dams that qualify as Big Dams, 3300 of them built after Independence.
4. One- fifth of our population- 200 million people- does not have safe drinking water.

**Passage 3**

Big dams started well, but have ended badly. There was a time when everybody loved them; everybody had them- the Communists, Capitalists, Christians, Muslims, Hindus, and Buddhists. There was a time when Big Dams moved men to poverty. Not any longer. All over the world, there is a movement growing against big dams. In the First World, they're being de-commissioned, blown up. The fact that they do more harm than good is no longer just conjecture. Big Dams are obsolete. They are uncool. They are undemocratic. They're a government's way of accumulating authority (deciding who will get how much water and who will grow what where). They are brazen means of taking water, land, and irrigation away from the poor and gifting it to the rich.

**Questions-**

1. How did the dam start and end?
2. What moved men to poverty?
3. What movement is growing in the world?
4. Dams are the brazen means of what?

**Answers-**

1. Big Dams started well, but have ended badly.
2. Big Dams moved men to poverty.
3. A movement is growing against Big Dams.



4. Dams are brazen means of taking water, land, and irrigation away from the poor and gifting it to the rich.

## 2.6 SUMMARY

This essay is an excerpt from Arundhati Roy's (1961) 'The Algebra of Infinite Justice'. The book discusses various perspectives of global and local concerns. In this essay, she says that big dams are harmful to the environment. They have become obsolete. The advanced countries have stopped constructing big dams. These dams displace huge populations and make people homeless. They cause floods and spread diseases. When big dams were constructed for the first time, they looked very impressive. The water of a river was blocked and collected in a big reservoir. These reservoirs looked like big lakes. People were attracted towards them and responded to them as they reacted to the sea or the big lakes. The romantic people even wrote poems about them. That is why the author says that there was a time when the big dams moved men to poetry. But now the big dams have lost their charm.

The big dams have to create big reservoirs. These reservoirs displace people and make them homeless and destitute. The big dams affect the ecology. They lay the earth to waste. They cause floods, waterlogging, and salinity. There is evidence that big dams are linked to earthquakes. It has been found out that the big dams do more harm than good. So advanced countries have stopped building big dams. Big dams are undemocratic because they favor the rich more than the poor. They are the government's way of accumulating authority. They are the means of taking water, land, and irrigation from the poor and giving it to the rich.

## 2.7 KEYWORDS

**Give the phonetic transcriptions of the following words taken from the chapter-**



1. Famous
2. Nation
3. Control
4. Flood
5. Ban
6. Work
7. People
8. Myth
9. Wide
10. Open
11. Badly
12. Home
13. Make
14. One
15. New
16. Year
17. And
18. More
19. Our

**Vocabulary Exercise**

**Write synonymous of the words-**

1. Begin .....start
2. Excited.....curious
3. Verse.....poetry

**Write the antonyms of these words-**

1. Destruction .....Construction
2. Rare .....common
3. Truth .....conjecture



4. Denial .....acceptance
5. Accuse .....acquit
6. Staid .....fresh
7. Enlarge .....reserved
8. Virtue .....vice

**Explain the following words-**

1. Geology- the science of the study of the earth.
2. Amnesty –general pardon to the wrongdoer.
3. Cardiologist- a doctor who specializes in heart disease.
4. e-mail- electronic mail

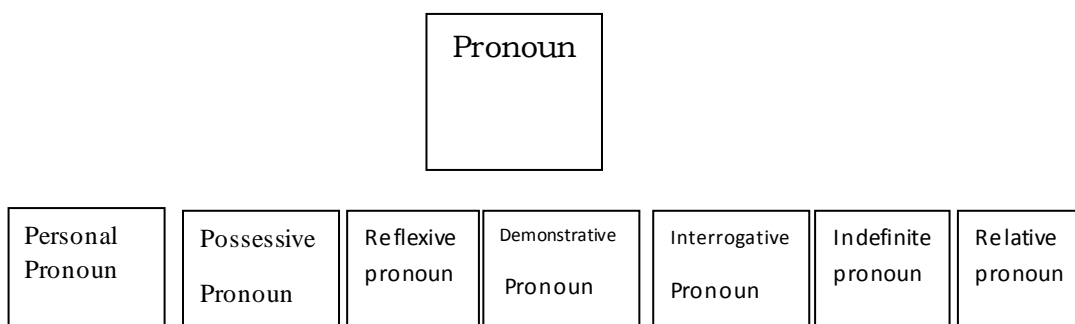
**2.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS-(SAQ'S)**

- What is a pronoun? Classify various forms of pronoun.
- Describe the present continuous tense.
- Describe phrasal verbs.

**2.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS**

A pronoun is the word that is used in place of the noun is called a pronoun. It is used to avoid the repetition of the same noun in speech or writing.

The pronoun can be classified as such-







### 1. Personal pronoun-

The pronouns stand for a person or a thing. Personal pronouns replace a noun that names people / things in the subject and object position. I, we, you, he, she, and they are the personal pronoun which can be used in subject positions, whereas me, you, him, her, it, and us are used in object position. for example -

- I came here with my friend.

(I here is a personal pronoun in the subject position.)

- Please give me a glass of water.

(Me here is a personal pronoun in object position)

### 2. Possessive Pronoun-

These pronouns are used to talk about things belonging to people. Mine, ours, hers, his, theirs, and its, are possessive pronoun.

- You can use your pen, I will use mine.
- We have bought a new car. It is ours now.

### 3. Reflexive pronoun-

These pronouns are used when the subject and object of a verb are same. These are used for the sake of emphasis. These are myself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

- They themselves committed the crime.
- She herself says so.

### 4. Demonstrative pronoun-

The pronoun which points out the person or objects it refers to is a demonstrative pronoun. it includes this, that, these, those,



- This is my pen.
- These are books.

### 5. Interrogative pronoun-

Words like what, which, who, whom, whose are interrogative pronouns, for they are used for asking questions.

- What are you looking for?
- Who are you?
- Whose pen is it?

### 6. Indefinite pronoun

The pronouns which refer to a person or things in a general way, but not in a particular way, are called indefinite pronoun. They are someone, somebody, everyone, everybody, few, none, each, every.

- Everybody was present at the meeting.
- Have you seen anybody entering the house?

### 7. Relative pronouns

The words like who, whom, whose, which, etc. are relative pronouns because they refer or relate to an earlier noun which is called its antecedent.

- The girl who is dancing is my sister.
- I found the book which I had lost.

### Exercises

Identify the kind of pronoun used in each of the following sentences.

- I hate the man who is patronizing.
- I know the person whose daughter was part of the winning team.
- A chair is a piece of furniture which can be used to sit.
- Ask Robin to come with us for a drive.
- You should use your common sense.



- The children are cooking something for the party.
- You look sad. Is everything all right?
- Have you checked this?
- What is your name?
- I cannot see anyone in the house?

**Join each of the following pair of sentences using pronoun-**

- The boy stole my camera. The boy was punished.  
The boy was punished who stole my camera.
- I know a person. The person has been to Australia to study.  
I know a person who has been to Australia to study.
- I saw a girl. She was dancing.  
I saw a girl who was dancing.
- This is the person. His son helped you book the ticket.  
This is the person whose son helped you book the ticket.
- The teacher sat on a chair. It was printed black.  
The teacher sat on a chair which was printed black.
- He is a well-known person. His honesty is the talk of the time.  
He is a well known person whose honesty is the talk of the time.
- This is the bridge. It was built in a month.  
This is the bridge which was built in a month.

**2.9.1 Grammar exercise**

**Present continuous tense**

This tense is used to denote an action which is going on at the time of speaking.



I am waiting for the train.

She is talking to her daughter.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I am watching T.V.	I am not watching T.V.	Am I watching T.V.
She is coming by car.	She is not coming	Is she coming by car?
My son is learning the piano.	My son is not learning the piano	Is my son learning the piano?
We are working on a research project.	We are not working on a research project.	Are we working on a research project?

**This tense is also used when we are in the middle of an action, but not necessarily actually at the moment of speaking.**

I am reading a novel these days.

We are attending the party tomorrow.

**Change the following sentence into the present continuous tense.**

- My father takes his bath.  
My father is taking his bath.
- I read the Time of India  
I am reading the Time of India.
- The children play in the garden.  
The children are playing in the garden.
- The vendor sells fruit in our street.  
The vendor is selling fruit in our street.
- The boys rehearse a play for college days.  
The boys are rehearsing a play for college days.

**Fill the blanks in the following sentence using the present continuous tense**



- Hurry up, we are getting late. (get)
- The men are sitting at the table on our left (sit)
- The train is leaving the platform. (Leave)
- The clouds are moving across the sky (moving)
- Are you drinking coffee now?

### 2.9.2 Phrasal verb

Phrasal verbs are that consist of two or some things, three words. The first word is a verb and it is followed by

An adverb (He turned down my request.)

A preposition (Inflation is eating into my savings)

An adverb and a preposition both (I cannot put up with your demand.)

#### Exercise-

- Bring about- Cause to happen
- Bring out- Bring to light
- Bring up-To rear

#### Use the following phrasal verbs in sentences

Throw in to	He has thrown himself into the work of writing a book.
Equated with	Helping the poor is equated with worshipping God
Boast of	He always boasts of his new car.
Move to	Her story moved me to tears.
Blow up	The government blew up a mountain to make a road.
Live up to	Over government has not lived up to people's hopes.
Blow wide open	The investigators blew the criminal's story wide open.



### List of important Phrasal verbs

<b>ask around</b>	ask many people the same question	I <b>asked around</b> but nobody has seen my wallet.
<b>add up to</b> <i>something</i>	equal	Your purchases <b>add up to</b> \$205.32.
<b>back</b> <i>something up</i>	reverse	You'll have to <b>back up</b> your car so that I can get out.
<b>back</b> <i>somebody up</i>	support	My wife <b>backed me up</b> over my decision to quit my job.
<b>blow up</b>	explode	The racing car <b>blew up</b> after it crashed into the fence.
<b>blow</b> <i>something up</i>	add air	We have to <b>blow</b> 50 balloons <b>up</b> for the party.
<b>break down</b>	stop functioning (vehicle, machine)	Our car <b>broke down</b> at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
<b>break down</b>	get upset	The woman <b>broke down</b> when the police told her that her son had died.



<b>break something down</b>	divide into smaller parts	Our teacher <b>broke</b> the final project <b>down</b> into three separate parts.
<b>break in</b>	force entry to a building	Somebody <b>broke in</b> last night and stole our stereo.
<b>break into something</b>	enter forcibly	The firemen had to <b>break into</b> the room to rescue the children.
<b>break something in</b>	wear something a few times so that it doesn't look/feel new	I need to <b>break</b> these shoes <b>in</b> before we run next week.
<b>break-in</b>	interrupt	The TV station <b>broke in</b> to report the news of the president's death.
<b>break up</b>	end a relationship	My boyfriend and I <b>broke up</b> before I moved to America.
<b>break up</b>	start laughing (informal)	The kids just <b>broke up</b> as soon as the clown started talking.
<b>break out</b>	escape	The prisoners <b>broke out</b> of jail when the guards weren't looking.
<b>break out in something</b>	develop a skin condition	I <b>broke out in</b> a rash after our camping trip.



<b>bring somebody down</b>	make unhappy	This sad music is <b>bringing</b> me <b>down</b> .
<b>bring somebody up</b>	raise a child	My grandparents <b>brought</b> me <b>up</b> after my parents died.
<b>bring something up</b>	start talking about a subject	My mother walks out of the room when my father <b>brings up</b> sports.
<b>bring something up</b>	vomit	He drank so much that he <b>brought</b> his dinner <b>up</b> in the toilet.
<b>call around</b>	phone many different places/people	We <b>called around</b> but we weren't able to find the car part we needed.
<b>call somebody back</b>	return a phone call	I <b>called</b> the company <b>back</b> but the offices were closed for the weekend.
<b>call something off</b>	cancel	Jason <b>called</b> the wedding <b>off</b> because he wasn't in love with his fiancé.
<b>call on somebody</b>	ask for an answer or opinion	The professor <b>called on</b> me for question 1.





<b>call on</b> <i>somebody</i>	visit somebody	We <b>called on</b> you last night but you weren't home.
<b>call</b> <i>somebody up</i>	phone	Give me your phone number and I will <b>call</b> you <b>up</b> when we are in town.
<b>calm down</b>	relax after being angry	You are still mad. You need to <b>calm down</b> before you drive the car.
not <b>care</b> <i>for somebody/ something</i>	not like (formal)	I don't <b>care about</b> his behavior.
<b>catch up</b>	get to the same point as somebody else	You'll have to run faster than that if you want to <b>catch up</b> with Marty.
<b>check-in</b>	arrive and register at a hotel or airport	We will get the hotel keys when we <b>check-in</b> .
<b>check out</b>	leave a hotel	You have to <b>check out</b> of the hotel before 11:00 AM.
<b>check</b> <i>somebody/ something out</i>	look at it carefully, investigate	The company <b>checks out</b> all new employees.



<b>check out</b> <i>somebody/ something</i>	look at (informal)	<b>Check out</b> the crazy hair on that guy!
<b>cheer up</b>	become happier	She <b>cheered up</b> when she heard the good news.
<b>cheer somebody up</b>	make happier	I brought you some flowers to <b>cheer you up</b> .
<b>chip in</b>	help	If everyone <b>chips in</b> we can get the kitchen painted by noon.
<b>clean something up</b>	tidy, clean	Please <b>clean up</b> your bedroom before you go outside.
<b>come across</b> <i>something</i>	find unexpectedly	I <b>came across</b> these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
<b>come apart</b>	separate	The top and bottom <b>come apart</b> if you pull hard enough.
<b>come down with</b> <i>something</i>	become sick	My nephew <b>came down with</b> chickenpox this weekend.
<b>come forward</b>	volunteer for a task or to give evidence	The woman <b>came forward</b> with her husband's fingerprints.
<b>come from</b> <i>someplace</i>	originate in	The art of origami <b>comes from</b> Asia.



<b>count on</b> <i>somebody/ something</i>	rely on	I am <b>counting on</b> you to make dinner while I am out.
<b>cross something out</b>	draw a line through	Please <b>cross out</b> your old address and write your new one .
<b>cut back on</b> <i>something</i>	consume less	My doctor wants me to <b>cut back on</b> sweets and fatty foods.
<b>cut something down</b>	make something fall to the ground	We had to <b>cut</b> the old tree

### 2.9.3 Extended Composition

#### Write a paragraph on 'The prize Distribution Function'

The prize distribution function of our college was held on 6th April this year. It started at 8 a.m. The whole school was decorated. The Education Minister arrived to preside over the function. He arrived at 8 a.m. The Principal received him. Teachers and students offered him bouquets. The function started with a prayer song by two girls. Then the girls staged a dance item. Then a drama was staged. All these items were liked very much. The singers and dancers were cheered. Then the Principal read out the Annual Report. It showed that the school had made good progress. The chief guest then distributed the prizes. The prize-winners received prizes and cheers. In the end, the chief guest made a short speech and congratulated the prize-winners. He advised all to work hard. The Principal thanked the chief guest. The chief guest departed. The function came to an end.

### 2.10 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

#### Recommended works of Arundhati Roy



- The Hanging of Afzal Guru and the Strange Case of the Attack on the Indian Parliament. New Delhi: Penguin. 2013. ISBN 978-0143420750.
- Capitalism: A Ghost Story. Chicago: Haymarket Books, 2014. ISBN 978-1-60846-385-5<sup>[106]</sup>
- Things that Can and Cannot Be Said: Essays and Conversations (with John Cusack). Chicago: Haymarket Books, 2016. ISBN 978-1-608-46717-4
- The Doctor and the Saint: Caste, Race, and Annihilation of Caste, the Debate Between B.R. Ambedkar and M.K. Gandhi. Chicago: Haymarket Books, 2017. ISBN 978-1-608-46797-6
- My Seditious Heart: Collected Non-Fiction. Chicago: Haymarket Books, 2019. ISBN 978-1-608-46676-4
- Azadi: Freedom, Fascism, Fiction. Haymarket Books, 2020. ISBN 1642592609

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:03</b>	<b>The Generation Gap</b>
<b>The Generation Gap</b>	

**Lesson Structure****3.1 Learning Objectives****3.2 Introduction****3.3 Main Body of the Text****3.3.1 About the Author****3.3.2 About the Essay****3.4 Further Body of the text****3.5 Check your Progress****3.6 Summary****3.7 Keywords****3.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****3.9 Answers to Your Progress****3.9.1 Language Activity****3.9.2 Extended Composition****3.10 References and Suggested Readings****3.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES**

After going through this lesson you will be able to-



- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of the sound system.

### **3.2 INTRODUCTION**



#### **Two Generations**

##### **What Is a Generation Gap?**

A generation gap refers to the chasm that separates the thoughts expressed by members of two different generations. More specifically, a generation gap can be used to describe the differences in actions, beliefs, and tastes exhibited by members of younger generations, versus older ones.

The subjects at hand may be vast and varied but can include politics, values, and pop culture. While generation gaps have been prevalent throughout all periods of history, the breadth of differences of these gaps has widened in the 20th and 21st centuries. Generation gaps are caused by increased life expectancy, rapid changes in society, and the mobility of society. Effects of the generation gap include conflict among family members of different generations and misunderstandings. In short, a



generation gap is commonly perceived to refer to differences between generations that cause conflict and complicate communication creating a "gap."

### **3.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT**

This chapter discusses the problems of self-identity and independence faced by adolescent boys and girls. A young person goes through various stages of identification rejects the earlier role models and forms a new identity following the needs of the times. This desire to establish a new identity may be misunderstood by the elders as insolence or rebellion. However, all rebellion is not negative. It can be channeled positively and be used in the transformation of a young individual into a responsible adult.

#### **3.3.1 About the Author**

Benjamin McLane Spock was a famous American pediatrician whose book 'Body and Child Care' (1946) are one of the best selling volumes in history. The book's premise to mothers is that 'you know more than you think you do'

Spock was the first pediatrician to study psychoanalysis to try to understand children's needs and family dynamics. His ideas about childcare influenced several generations of parents to be more flexible and affectionate with their children and to treat them as an individual. However, his theories were also widely criticized by colleagues for relying too heavily on anecdotal evidence rather than serious academic research.

#### **3.3.2 About the Essay**

This chapter discusses the problems of self-identity and independence faced by adolescent boys and girls. A young person goes through various stages of identification rejects the earlier role models and forms a new identity following the needs of the times. This desire to establish a new identity may be misunderstood by the elders as insolence or rebellion. However, all rebellion is not negative. It can be



channeled positively and be used in the transformation of a young individual into a responsible adult.

### **3.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT**

Rebelliousness against parents is a natural, inevitable aspect of adolescence. It assists them in giving up the comforts and security of home, achieving real independence, working for progress.

The most basic problem for a young person, though he doesn't usually think of it in these terms, is to find his own identity, to find out what sort of person he desires to be, and to get started being a person. This just doesn't mean just the specific job he will take or the hobbies he will enjoy. It means the kind of personality he'll end up with, how he'll be thought of by his friends, family, and himself. It is not so much a matter of coming to conscious decisions - it's gaining a sense of being an independent person, with a job to do.

Three principal elements go to make up the identity an individual finally achieves. First and foremost is the character he was developing all through childhood. A boy, beginning at about the age of three, has been striving to be a man just like his father and the little girl to be like her mother. So they have had to cast themselves in the molds of their parents - they are made of their parents.

But to become an effective adult an individual must break off his dependence on his parents, not just free enough to leave home but to develop ideas and aims of his own so that he can help to solve the existing problems of the society in which he lives. His feeling of impatience and criticism towards his parents is what put him on the lookout for new ideas, new methods that may better solve problems of the day - and incidentally, also show up his parents' generation as pretty well stuck-in-the-mud. How strong the rebelliousness in each individual is and what form it takes is a second element in determining his eventual identity.





The third element is the nature of the times and the need of the times. These call on the youth for different qualities in different historical periods. As Erik Erikson explains in *Young Man Luther*, the corruption of the church in Martin Luther's time, the real need for major reform, inspired in Luther fearlessness, clarity, eloquence, and perseverance of heroic proportions. In a less critical age, Luther might remain an undistinguished cleric.

Many of the advances of civilization- technical inventions, scientific discoveries- have been conceived by young people just on the threshold of adulthood. Because they were impatient with the achievements of the past and because they did not need to defend the present, they were able to envision and bring on the future.

### **3.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**

**Answer the questions in 25-30 words**

1. Why is rebelliousness common in young people?
2. What is the first formative influence on the individual?
3. To become an effective adult what should a growing child do?
4. What is the second element that makes up the identity of an individual?
5. What brought about many of the developments in human civilizations?

#### **Answers**

1. It is common because rebelliousness is a natural aspect of adolescence. It assists them in giving them the comforts and security of home, achieving real independence, working for progress.
2. The first formative influences are parents. In early childhood, a boy strives to be like his father and the little girl to be like her mother.
3. He must break off his dependence on his parents. But to become an effective adult an individual must develop ideas and aims of his own.



4. The second element in determining his identity depends on how strong his rebellion is and what form it takes. To be effective, it must be directed into the right channels.
5. Many of the developments in human civilization were brought about by young people. They were able to have a vision of the future because they were impatient with the achievements of the past.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

1. What does the word 'identity' mean?
2. Trace the stages through which a young person passes as he / she matures into an individual.
3. Write about the positive side of rebelliousness.

**Answers**

1. Identity is a person's conception and expression of his individuality in family or society. Three elements shape a person's identity. The first is the influence of parents in childhood. A boy strives to be like his father and the little girl to be like her mother. The second is the rebelliousness against the old set up and concepts. The third element is the role of society in which he lives. The identity of a young person is formed by the fact of how he faces the challenges of life and society.
2. A young person goes through various stages of identity. In the beginning, children strive to be like their parents. A boy strives to be like his father and the little girl to be like her mother. In the second stage, they have to shake off the dependence of their dependence on their parents. They have to look out for new ideas to solve the problems of the day to day life. In the third stage, they are fully independent. They can take decisions for themselves. But at this stage, they develop according to nature and the needs of the times.



3. In this essay, the writer says that rebelliousness against the parents is not always negative. It is a natural aspect of adolescence. It assists them in achieving real independence for progress. His feeling of criticism and impatience towards his parents is not always bad. It puts him on the lookout for new ideas to solve the problems of life. It also helps him to show how the old are not progressing with time. It means that the kind of personality that he will finally achieve. It also means what final impression he will form upon his friends, family, and himself.

**Comprehension Passage****Passage 1**

Rebelliousness against parents is a natural, inevitable aspect of adolescence. It assists them in giving up the comforts and security of home, achieving real independence, working for progress.

The most basic problem for a young person, though he doesn't usually think of it in these terms, is to find his own identity, to find out what sort of person he desires to be, and to get started being a person. This just doesn't mean just the specific job he will take or the hobbies he will enjoy. It means the kind of personality he'll end up with, how he'll be thought of by his friends, family, and himself. It is not so much a matter of coming to conscious decisions - it's gaining a sense of being an independent person, with a job to do.

**Questions-**

1. What is an inevitable aspect of adolescence?
2. What is the most basic problem for the young person?
3. What does the search for identity for the young man mean?
4. What does the gaining of identity mean?

**Answers-**

1. Rebelliousness against parents is a natural, inevitable aspect of adolescence.



2. The most basic problem for a young person is to find his own identity.
3. It means the kind of personality that he will acquire finally.
4. It means gaining a sense of being an independent person.

**Passage 2**

Three principal elements go to make up the identity an individual finally achieves. First and foremost is the character he was developing all through childhood. A boy, beginning at about the age of three, has been striving to be a man just like his father and the little girl to be like her mother. So they have had to cast themselves in the molds of their parents- they are made of their parents.

**Questions-**

1. Name the lesson from which this passage has been taken.
2. What is the first and foremost element?
3. How many elements go to make up the identity of an individual?
4. How do the very young children cast themselves?

**Answers-**

1. The Generation Gap.
2. The first and foremost element is the character, he was developing all through childhood.
3. Three principal elements go to make up the identity of an individual.
4. It means gaining a sense of being an independent person.

**Passage 3**

The third element is the nature of the times and the need of the times. These call on the youth for different qualities in different historical periods. As Erik Erikson explains in Young Man Luther, the corruption of the church in Martin Luther's time, the real need for major reform, inspired in Luther fearlessness, clarity, eloquence, and perseverance of heroic proportions. In a less critical age, Luther might remain an undistinguished cleric.



Many of the advances of civilization- technical inventions, scientific discoveries- have been conceived by young people just on the threshold of adulthood. Because they were impatient with the achievements of the past and because they did not need to defend the present, they were able to envision and bring on the future.

**Questions-**

1. What is the third element in determining the personality of a young man?
2. What inspired fearlessness, clarity, eloquence, and perseverance in Luther?
3. What has been conceived by young people?
4. Why were the young men able to envision and bring on the future?

**Answers-**

1. The third element is the nature of the times and the needs of the times.
2. The corruption of the church inspired fearlessness, clarity, eloquence, and perseverance in Luther.
3. Many of the advances in civilization have been conceived by young people.
4. They were able to envision and bring on the future because they were with the achievements of the past.

**3.6 SUMMARY**

In this essay, the author says that rebelliousness against parents in adolescence is a natural and unavoidable characteristic in children. It happens due to their desire in giving up the comforts and security of home, to get real independence and working for progress. The most basic desire of the young person in the age of adolescence is to find his own identity to know what type of person he wishes to be in life.

- And his desire to be considered as a young person.
- But these desires are concerns not only just specific jobs or hobbies. It means the kind of personality he will end up with.
- How he will be thought of by his friends, family, and himself.
- Gaining a sense of being an independent person



Three principal elements affect the personality of a child.

- First and foremost is the character he was developing all through childhood up to the age of three, a boy strives to be a man like his father and the little girl to be like her mother. So they try to cast themselves in the mold of their parents. But to become an effective adult, an individual must break off most of his dependence on his parents not only to free enough to leave home but to develop ideas and aims of his own so that he can help solve the existing problems of the society in which he will live. This feeling of impatience and criticism towards his parents put him on the lookout for new ideas; new methods that may better solve the problems of the day.
- The second element that affects the personality of an individual is the power of rebelliousness in each individual. This power determines his eventual identity.
- The third element is the nature of the times and the needs of the times. These needs bring in youth different qualities in different historical periods

Erik Erikson explains in Young Man Luther, the corruption of the church in Martin Luther's time the real need for major reforms, inspired by Luther's fearlessness, Darity, eloquence, and perseverance of heroic proportions.

Many of the advances of civilizations, technical inventions, scientific discoveries- all are the results of the inventive minds of young people just on the threshold of adulthood. They could do so because they were impatient with the achievements of the past and because they had no need to defend the present, they were able to envision and bring on the future.

### 3.7 KEYWORDS

**Transcribe the following words-**

1. Person



2. Home
3. Sense
4. Age
5. Need
6. Defend
7. People
8. Able
9. Luther
10. Future
11. Enough
12. Ghost

### 3.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS (SAQ'S)

**Find the words in the chapter that are synonymous with the italicized words in the following sentences.**

- Revolt against elders is common amongst young people: *Rebelliousness*.....
- She has *oratorical* skills: Eloquence
- *Patience* is a great quality: Perseverance

**Find the words in the chapter that are antonyms with the italicized words in the following sentences.**

- The incident was *avoidable*: Inevitable
- Everyone likes to be *praised*: Censured
- He is such a *coward*: Fearless

**Find one-word substitutes for the following**

- Teenage- Adolescent
- Activities to nurture extracurricular skills-Hobbies
- One who opts for a job in the church-Cleric
- A starting point-Threshold

**Find antonyms of the following words-**

Word	Antonyms
Assist	Obstruct
Comfort	Inconvenience
Gain	Loss
Strive	Slacken
Eloquent	Tongue-tied

**Give the noun forms of the following words-**

Words	Noun
Inevitable	Inevitability
Progress	Progression
Desirable	Desirability
Decide	Decision
Develop	Development

**3.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS****Adjective**

An adjective is a word used to qualify a noun or a pronoun.

For example-

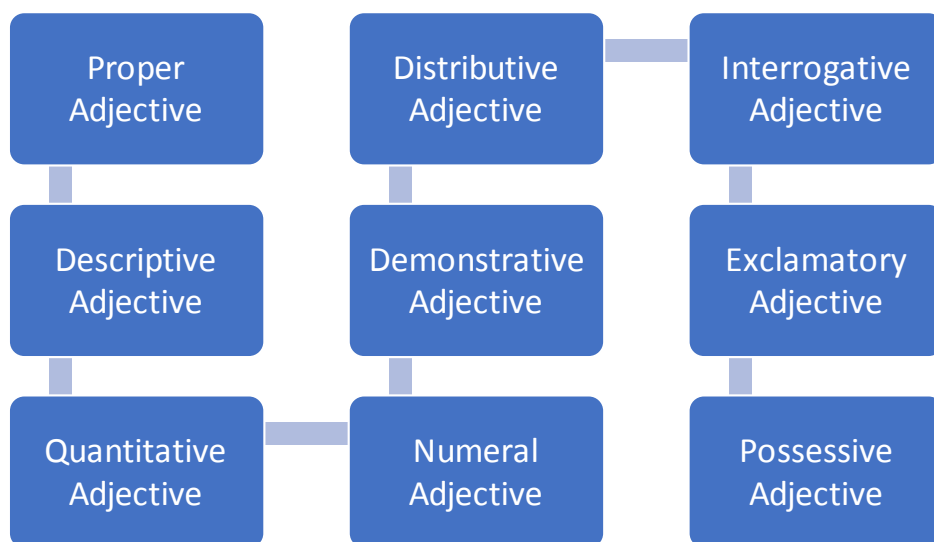
- Anil is an *intelligent* boy. (quality)
- Arun ate *two* apples. (numeral)
- I want *some* milk. (quantity)

**3.9.1 Language Activity**





### Kind of Adjectives



Proper Adjective- I love *Shakespearean* plays. (proper noun)

I love *Italian* food. (proper noun)

Descriptive Adjective- She is wearing a *pink* dress. (description)

He is a *brave* soldier. (description)

Quantitative Adjective- I have *no* money. (quantity)

She has *enough* time. (quantity)

Numeral adjective- I have *ten* rupees. (number)

*Two* boys were laughing at me. (number)

Demonstrative Adjective- *This* is my bag. (demonstrate)

*Those* flowers are beautiful. (demonstrate)

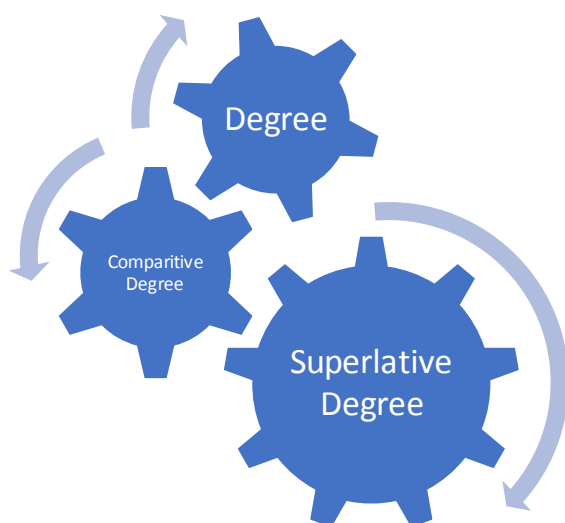
Distributive Adjective- *Each* boy has to present. (distribution)

*Either* she or her mother will come. (distribution)



Interrogative Adjective- <i>Whose</i> books are these? (question) <i>Which</i> road should be taken? (question)
Exclamatory Adjective- <i>What</i> a beautiful dress! (exclamation) <i>What</i> a piece of art! (exclamation)
Possessive Adjective- The dog is wagging <i>its</i> tail. (possessive) This is <i>my</i> bag. (possessive)

### Comparison of adjective



Madhu is a <i>clever</i> girl. (adjective)
Madhu is cleverer than her friend. (comparison between two people)
Madhu is the cleverest girl in our class. (comparison between more than two people)

### Fill the blanks with a proper degree of adjectives given in the bracket

- Suresh is my old friend. (Old)



- Of these two books, this is better. (good) (Comparison between the two)
- Preeti is the brightest of all the students. (bright) (Comparison between more than two)
- Iron is more useful than any other metal. (useful) (Comparison)
- Geeta is the best friend I have. (good) (Comparison between more than two)

## Tenses

### Present Perfect Tense

It shows an action done in the past and has its effect at present.

For example-

- I have done my work.
- They have eaten their food.

### Present Perfect Progressive Tense

It shows an action that began at some point in the past and is continuing at present

For example-

- Ritu has been working here since 2012.
- Mukesh has been playing cricket for the last two hours.
- I have been living in Hisar since I started schooling.

### Fill the blanks with the present perfect continuous tense of the verbs-

- My brother is a writer. He writes a novel. He has been writing since 1920.  
(write)
- I love learning languages. I have learned different languages. I have been learning languages since childhood. (learn)

### 3.9.2 Extended Composition



**Prepare a report on the adventure trip you went on during the summer vacation.**

I was very eager to go on a picnic. Some of my friends consented and we made a program to go near a lake. My brother also accompanied us. There we saw a very beautiful palace surrounded by water. Two strangers were talking there. The two men were talking about a hidden treasure. When they went for lunch, unfortunately, the map for the passage where the treasure was hidden dropped from their belongings. To reach the palace we had to pass through much narrow passage and ultimately we succeeded in reaching the spot. Thus we found the treasure. Then we informed our parents and the police. That summer vacations are memorable for me.

**3.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS**

- *Hidalgo, Louise (August 23, 2011). "Dr. Spock's Baby and Child Care at 65". BBC News. Retrieved October 24, 2019.*
- Bart Barnes, Pediatrician Benjamin Spock Dies, *The Washington Post*, March 17, 1998; Page A01.
- "Benjamin Spock -New Netherland Institute". *New Netherland Institute*. Retrieved October 24, 2019.
- Biography of Spock at drspock.com
- *Kochakian, Mary Jo (June 14, 1998). "Public vs. Private: Dr. Spock, Mr. Hyde". The Washington Post.*
- *Pace, Eric (March 17, 1998). "Benjamin Spock, World's Pediatrician, Dies at 94". The New York Times.*

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:04</b>	
<b>Language and National Identity</b> <b>Author Nirmal Verma</b>	

**Lesson Structure****4.1 Learning Objectives****4.2 Introduction****4.3 Main Body of the Text****4.3.1 About the Author****4.3.2 About the Essay****4.4 Further Body of the Text****4.5 Check Your Progress****4.6 Summary****4.7 Keywords****4.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****4.9 Answers to Your Progress****4.9.1 Language Activity****4.9.2 Extended Composition****4.10 References and Suggested Readings**



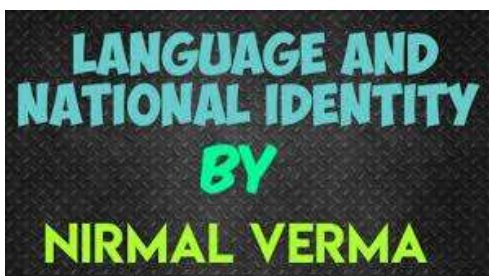
#### 4.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- To give grammar practice to students

#### 4.2 INTRODUCTION

Language can be used in many ways; one of them is in specific purpose area such as social or cultural communication, government decisions, political debate, media which is linked to the ability to express the relevant content. Learner or user of language is connected in time and space to cultural tradition which is considered as a significant process connected with the unique form of access to other traditions.



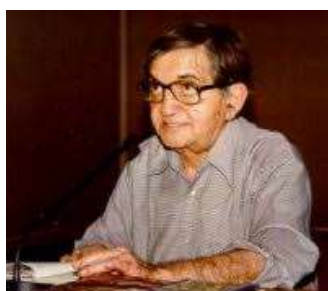
#### 4.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

This text is an excerpt from his essay Language and National Identity, which reflects Verma's concern with the language and the identity that is vested in it for the people of the nation. Discussing the necessity of language for constructing and asserting identity at all levels, the author, begins with the smallest unit of the individual language is the basis of self-discovery and analysis. In short, we need words to objectify ourselves and to share our feeling with others, as much as we need them to



think. We need language for our dreams and the shaping of our culture. As such it looms large over us, enveloping us in multiple ways.

#### **4.3.1 About the author**



Nirmal Verma (1929-2005)

He was a Hindi writer, novelist, activist, and translator. He is credited as being one of the pioneers of the Nai Kahani literary movement of Hindi literature. In his career spanning five decades and various forms of literature like a story, travelogue, and essays he penned fine novels, 8 short story collections, and nine books of nonfiction including essays and travelogues. He worked freely across genres and various ideological positions. He lived in Prague for ten years during which he translated nine world classics into Hindi. As a young man, he used to attend Gandhi's prayer meetings in Berla House though he was also a card-holding member of the communist party. On his return to India, he shed his communist beliefs and his mind turned towards more philosophical and reflective concerns.

#### **4.3.2 About the essay**

This text is an excerpt from his essay Language and National Identity, which reflects Verma's concern with the language and the identity that is vested in it for the people of the nation. Discussing the necessity of language for constructing and asserting identity at all levels, he begins with the smallest unit of the individual language is the basis of self-discovery and analysis. In short, we need words to objectify ourselves and to share our feeling with others, as much as we need them to think.



We need language for our dreams and the shaping of our culture. As such it looms large over us, enveloping us in multiple ways.

The important question is not how essential is language, but what colonialism has done to it diverting it from its natural path. Western thinkers and physiologists pushed the language of culture into the past but strangely enough also projected a picture of its continuity in other languages. The history/ histories of language are significant for understanding our own cultures.

#### **4.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT**

To say anything about language is like chasing your own shadow. It may be more appropriate to assert that we are its shadow; we create our reality with it and define ourselves through it, and with it. Man can never be defined fully, not only because there is something in him that is still unknown, but also because he has not yet completed the process of recreating and reinventing himself. We are unable to accept the man as a finished product. There has been much speculation about the manner, in which he may fulfill himself, the direction this fulfillment they may take, and the form it will acquire, and how he will project his innate potentialities in the future. Various scholars- from Nietzsche to Sri Aurobindo- have made predictions about his innate capacity. The question is not how to correct or relevant these prophecies are; the point to consider is that man being what he is, all these predictions are born of a painful disillusionment with what he is.

Man is the only creature- between a god and an animal- who finds himself in a strange situation of being incomplete; he lacks the self, the involvement, of the animal and does not possess the fullness of God. Even in the historical framework, the man appears as a figure half-drawn and incomplete, as if thwarted in the process of acquiring a proper shape, its colors lackluster and faded. The 'full figure' of man- if there is such a thing- is not without, but buried deep within him. To realize himself, a man digs 'within' and raises himself from his own grave.





Language is the most efficient weapon of self-discovery or self-analysis. It is that invisible part of the human body, which gives man an inner sight. The link between language and self-awareness puts man in a separate and unique category from all other living beings. This consciousness of his incompleteness makes him yearn for fulfillment.... Thus, the determination to attain it is also intrinsic to its realization. No culture is limited only to its reality, but also reveals itself through its dreams, and that is why language plays a very significant role in the shaping of culture.

The vision of a culture is largely formed by the memories that it carries. If the word is symbolic of a dream, it also has the hint of the memory. No language, as long as it is, can, therefore, be a dead language. If all else our past were to perish, even then the languages would remain through which the members of society communicate with each other, and though living in the present, are unconsciously linked with their past, and the past flows imperceptibly through the present. Language, in this manner, plays a double role; besides being the vehicle of communication, it is also the carrier of culture. Historical upheavals may impair the culture of a country, but its truth and cohesion persist in its language.

Each language, as it develops, establishes a special constitution and structure, which, once having come into existence, influences the inner responses of man. Both processes go on simultaneously; language determines the identity and the special characteristics of a race, and the collective experiences, memories, and traditions of a group mold the unique character of its language. This is, in a way, a circular process, in which the question of what comes first remains unanswered, like in the case of the chicken and egg. What is clear is that there is nothing like one language; there are numerous languages. And the various races, groups, and nationalities are nurtured by their languages; languages are their residing places. In this sense, each language in its ultimate form is a mother tongue.

Man is drawn to the world for the first time through language, opens up, and is linked to it. It is not only a part of the external day-to-day activity of a group, a part



of its supra structure (although it has a specific role in achievements of its worldly goals), it also decides its inner nature, impulses, and sensibility, and demonstrates its unique spiritual character. One language differs from another, not only in its sounds, intonations, and the meaning its words convey, but also in its 'world view'.

Each language looks at the universe in a particular manner, tests it, and translates it into its meanings in a special way. The connotations that the Rig Veda conveys through the symbols Surya, Agni, Dhenu, and Space to the Indian mind, and the images of certain divine forces that it conjures up, are distinct in their import from the Greek and Latin symbols, different because mythical sources and references are distinct and separate. Human languages are born in the same world, but each has its incomparable quality; manifest and well-defined. When we translate from one language to another, it is not just a translation of the words alone, but the transformation of a whole universe, with all its baggage, into another language.

Each language has its history, and also a geography of its own. We cannot separate its symbolic character from its natural environment. If symbols like Ganga, Saraswati, Himalaya, ocean, and space are deeply entrenched in the Indian languages and profoundly influence our sensibilities, it is not because they are the physical attributes of our natural habit, but because they are the carriers of our legendary memories which at one time linked Indians to their deities and lent a divine grace to their material existence. The meaning of the word, 'Bharat' was its essence - a region surrounded by divinity. The reason why 'Bharat' was called 'Dev Bhumi' - the land of gods - and Sanskrit was 'Dev Bhasha' - the language of gods - was to underline the eternal and sacred relationship between the land and language.

Language, with all its metaphors and imagery, played a significant role in kindling the national awakening in the 19<sup>th</sup> century in India. The novels of Bankim Babu, Sri Aurobindo's philosophy, Gandhi's Hind Swaraj, and Coomaraswamy's thoughts on art are ample evidence of this. When a handful of historians call the concept of Indian nationalism a mere 'construct', using the vocabulary of French philosophers,



where the very concept of 'Bharat' is labeled an imaginary product or 'invented construct' of some nationalist historians, then the linguistic and cultural foundations of Indian nationalism are overlooked, which is a living example of colonial forgetfulness. In India, the desire to seek freedom was inspired not only by political factors, but there was also the desire to retrieve our cultural identity from the darkness of oblivion.

From this point of view, it was different from the aggressive, egoistic sentiments that lay behind the modern nation-states, which came into existence only after the various races, nationalities, and folk languages were annihilated. That the Indian national awareness was free of self-involved rigidity right from its inception was because it had been forcibly imposed from above, but its roots lay deep in the Indian cultural traditions. The various dialects and languages of India, despite their distinctiveness, shared an inherent unity, and this could never obstruct the growth of national unification. Their diversity gave them openness- they lived in the same house; though the windows were different, their casements opened on a full panorama of the interrelationship of Indian culture. It is often said that we seek ourselves in our languages; perhaps, it happens in some cultures that they tell their stories in the language of dreams. The reality of the national identity of Bharat is perhaps reflected in such dream languages.

#### 4.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**Answer the following questions in 25-30 words**

1. Why does the author say that it may be more appropriate to assert that we are the shadow of language?
2. Why can a man be not accepted as a finished product?
3. Why does the author say that a language cannot be a dead language while it exists?
4. How does one language differ from another?
5. How do symbols like 'Ganga' influence people?

**Answers**

1. The writer says that man is the shadow of language. We define ourselves through it. Man creates his reality with it. So, man can never be defined fully because there is something in him that is still unknown.
2. Man can never be defined fully because there is something in him that is still unknown. Secondly, he has not yet completed the process of recreating and reinventing himself. So we are unable to accept the man as a finished product.
3. The vision of a culture is largely formed by the memories that it carries. If the world is symbolic of a dream, it also has the hint of the memory. No language, as long as it is, can, therefore, be a dead language.
4. One language differs from another, not only in its sounds, intonations, and the meanings its words convey, but also in its 'world view'. Each language looks at the universe in a particular manner, tests it, and translates it into its meanings in a special way. Human languages are born in the same world, but each has its incomparable quality, manifest and well-defined.
5. Each language has its history, and also a geography of its own. Symbols like Ganga, Saraswati, Himalaya, ocean, and space are deeply entrenched in the Indian languages and profoundly influence our sensibilities.

**Answer the following questions in 75-100 words**

1. What role does language play in the national awakening of India?
2. What relation does the author establish between man and language?
3. Recount the author's arguments about the diversity of cultures in India.

**Answers**

1. According to the author, language plays an important role in a nation's major social and political events. Language played a significant role in the national awakening in the 19<sup>th</sup> century in India. The novels of Bankim Babu, Sri Aurobindo's philosophy, Gandhi's Hind Swaraj, and



Coomaraswamy's thoughts on art are evidence of this. Often the linguistic and cultural foundations of Indian nationalism are overlooked. In India, the desire to seek freedom was inspired not only by political factors. But there was also the desire to bring out our cultural identity from the darkness of ignorance.

2. The writer says that man is the shadow of language. We define ourselves through our languages. There is a deep relation between man and language. Each language influences the inner responses of man. Both processes go on simultaneously. Language determines the identity and the special characteristics of a race. The collective experiences, memories, and traditions of a group mold the unique character of its language. What is clear is that there is nothing like one language; there are numerous languages. And the various races, groups, and nationalities are nurtured by their languages.
3. India has a diversity of cultures. This cultural diversity makes India a unique country. Divers culture in India uses diverse languages. Different languages and dialects are spoken in the different parts of our country. But the various dialects and languages of India shared an inherent unity, and this could never obstruct the growth of national unification. Their diversity gave them openness. Our languages provide a full panorama of the inter-relationship of Indian cultures. We seek ourselves in our languages. Perhaps, it happens in some cultures that they tell their stories in the language of dreams.

### Comprehensive Passage

#### Passage 1

To say anything about language is like chasing your own shadow. It may be more appropriate to assert that we are its shadow; we create our reality with it and define ourselves through it, and with it. Man can never be defined fully, not only because



there is something in him that is still unknown, but also because he has not yet completed the process of recreating and reinventing himself. We are unable to accept the man as a finished product. There has been much speculation about the manner, in which he may fulfill himself, the direction this fulfillment they may take, and the form it will acquire, and how he will project his innate potentialities in the future. Various scholars- from Nietzsche to Sri Aurobindo- have made predictions about his innate capacity. The question is not how to correct or relevant these prophecies are; the point to consider is that man being what he is, all these predictions are born of a painful disillusionment with what he is.

Questions-

1. What does the writer say about language?
2. Why can a man never be defined fully?
3. Who have made speculations about man's innate capacity?
4. What are the predictions about man made of?

Answers-

1. The writer says that man is the shadow of language.
2. Man can never be defined fully because there is something in him that is still unknown.
3. Various scholars have made predictions about man's innate capacity.
4. These predictions are born of a painful disillusionment with what man is.

### **Passage 2-**

Man is the only creature- between a god and an animal- who finds himself in a strange situation of being incomplete; he lacks the self, the involvement, of the animal and does not possess the fullness of God. Even in the historical framework, the man appears as a figure half-drawn and incomplete, as if thwarted in the process of acquiring a proper shape, its colors lackluster and faded. The 'full figure' of man- if



there is such a thing- is not without, but buried deep within him. To realize himself, a man digs 'within' and raises himself from his own grave.

**Questions**

1. Why is the man in a strange position?
2. How is the man between an animal and a god?
3. How does man appear in the historical framework?
4. Where is the full figure of a man?

**Answers-**

1. Man is in a strange position of being incomplete.
2. He lacks the involvement of the animal and does not possess the fullness of God.
3. In the historical framework, a man appears as a figure half-drawn and incomplete.
4. The 'full figure' of man is not without but buried deep within him.

**Passage 3-**

Man is drawn to the world for the first time through language, opens up, and is linked to it. It is not only a part of the external day-to-day activity of a group, a part of its superstructure (although it has a specific role in achievements of its worldly goals), it also decides its inner nature, impulses, and sensibility, and demonstrates its unique spiritual character. One language differs from another, not only in its sounds, intonations, and the meaning its words convey, but also in its 'world view'.

**Questions-**

1. How is a man drawn to the world for the first time?
2. What decides man's inner nature, impulses, and sensibility?
3. What has a specific role in the achievements of man's worldly goals?
4. How does one language differ from another?

**Answers-**



1. Man is drawn to the world for the first time through language.
2. Language decides man's inner nature, impulses, and sensibility.
3. Language has a specific role in the achievements of man's worldly goals.
4. One language differs from another, not only in its sounds, intonations but also in its world view.

**Passage 4**

The vision of a culture is largely formed by the memories that it carries. If the word is symbolic of a dream, it also has the hint of the memory. No language, as long as it is, can, therefore, be a dead language. If all else our past were to perish, even then the languages would remain through which the members of society communicate with each other, and though living in the present, are unconsciously linked with their past, and the past flows imperceptibly through the present. Language, in this manner, plays a double role; besides being the vehicle of communication, it is also the carrier of culture. Historical upheavals may impair the culture of a country, but its truth and cohesion persist in its language.

**Questions-**

1. How is the vision of a culture formed?
2. What would happen if everything else perished?
3. How does language play a double role?
4. What persists in the language of a country?

**Answers-**

1. The vision of a culture is largely formed by the memories that it carries.
2. If everything else perished, even then language would survive.
3. Besides being the vehicle of communication, it is also the carrier of culture.
4. A country's truth and cohesion persist in its language.

**4.6 SUMMARY**





The author says that self-identity and language are like the shadow of each other. We defined our self through it. It creates a reality with it. Man can never be defined fully because there is something in him that is still unknown. He has not yet completed the process of recreating and reinventing himself. Man is unaccepted as a finished product. Various scholars have made predictions about his innate capacity. Man is the only creature who finds himself in a strange situation of being incomplete. Even in the historical framework, the man appears as a figure half drawn and incomplete.

Language is the most efficient weapon of self-discovery or self-analysis. It gives man an inner sight. The link between language and self-awareness puts man in a separate and unique category from all other living beings. No culture is limited only to its reality but also reveals itself through its dreams. That is why language plays a very significant role in the shaping of culture.

The vision of culture is largely formed by the memories that it carries. No language as long as it is, can therefore be a dead language. Through language, we are unconsciously linked with the past. Thus language plays a double role. It is the vehicle of communication as well as the carrier of culture.

There is a deep relationship between man and language. Each language influences the inner response of man. Both processes go on simultaneously. Language determines the identity and the special characteristics of a race.

The collective experiences, memories, and traditions of a group mold the unique character of its language. What is clear is that there is nothing like one language, there are numerous languages. And the various races, groups, and nationalities are nurtured by their language.

One language differs from others not only in its sounds, intonations, and meaning but also in its 'world view'. Each language looks at the universe in a particular manner, tests it, and translates it into its meaning especially. Human languages are



born in the same world but each has its incomparable quality, manifest, and well-defined.

Each language has its history and geography. Symbols like Ganga, Saraswati, Himalaya, ocean, and space are deeply entrenched in the Indian languages and profoundly influence our sensibility. Indian languages are the carriers of our legendary memories which at one time Indian to their duties and lent a divine grace to their material existence. The meaning of the word 'Bharat' was its essence - a region surrounded by divinity.

The reason Bharat was called 'Dev Bhumi' - the land of gods - and Sanskrit was 'Dev Bhasha' - the language of gods - was the underline the eternal and sacred relationship between the land and the language.

Language played an important role in the national awakening in the nineteenth century in India. The novels of Bankim Babu, Sri Aurobindo's philosophy, Gandhi's Hind Swaras, and Coomaraswamy's thoughts on art are amply evidence of this. Often the linguistic and cultural foundations of Indian nationalism are overlooked. In India, the desire to seek freedom was inspired not only by political factors, but there was also the desire to bring out our cultural identity from the darkness of ignorance.

India has a diversity of cultures. But the various dialects and languages of India shared an inherent unity and this could never obstruct the growth of national unification.

India has a diversity of cultures. But the various dialects and languages of India shared an inherent unity. This diversity gave them openness. Our language provides a full panorama of the interrelationship of Indian culture. We seek ourselves in our languages perhaps it happens in some cultures that they tell their stories in the language of dreams.

#### **4.7 KEYWORDS**

**Phonetic Transcription of following words-**



- Shadow
- Create
- Manner
- Define
- Fulfill
- Point
- Capacity
- Form
- Project
- Grave
- Creature
- What
- God
- Reality
- Historical
- Drawn
- Figure
- These
- Recreating
- Direction
- Disillusion
- consider

#### 4.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS-(SAQ'S)

Find words from the essay that is synonymous with the italicized words in the following sentences.

Words	Synonymous
Run after	Chase



Obtain	Acquire
Inborn	Intrinsic
Well and successfully	Perfectly
Disclose	Reveal
Damaged	Impaired

**Find words from the essay that are antonyms with the italicized words in the following sentences.**

Words	Antonyms
Inappropriate	Appropriate
Destroy	Created
Incorrect	Correct
Perceptible	Imperceptibly
Mix	Separate
Dropped	Risen

**Find words from the essay that are antonyms with the italicized words in the following sentences**

Words	Antonyms
More	Less
Accept	Reject
Strange	Common
Unique	Ordinary
Flow	Stagnant



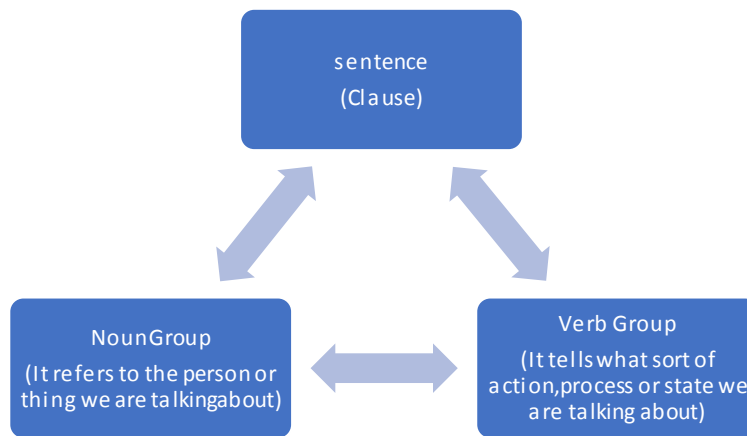
Expand

Contract

**4.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS****Explain the following words/terms-**

- Metaphor- a figure of speech in which an expression is used to refer to something that it doesn't denote to suggest a similarity
- Imagery-the formation of mental images, figures, or likenesses of things, or of such images collectively.
- Eternal-without beginning or end; lasting forever
- Divinity-the quality of being divine
- Culture –the behaviors and belief characteristic of a particular social, ethnic, or age group
- Egoistic-being centered in or preoccupied with oneself
- Intrinsic-belonging to or part of the real nature of something or somebody
- Innate –inborn
- Symbol- a thing which stands for something else
- Habitat-the place where a particular type of animal and plant is normally found

**4.9.1 Language activity****Verb-**

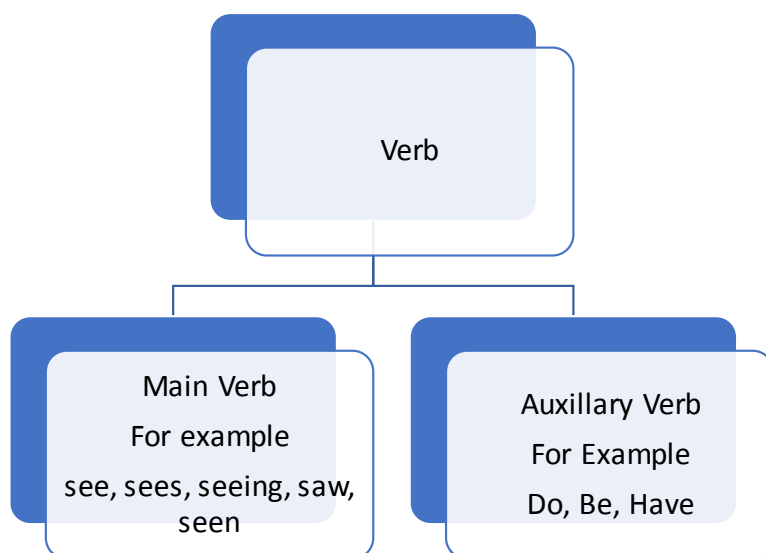


For Example -

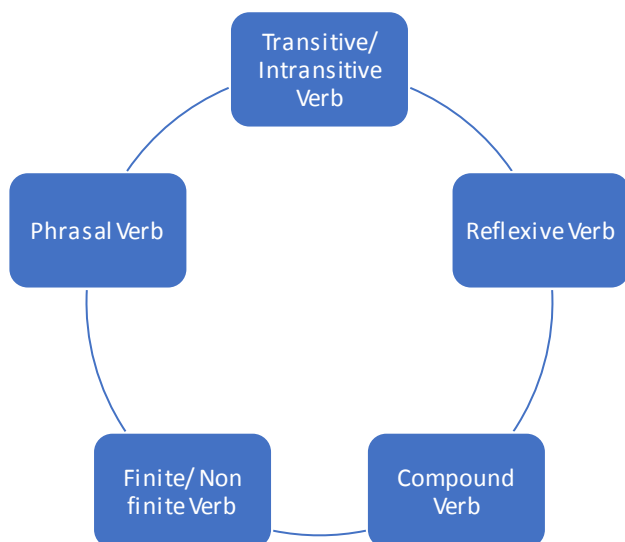
- I play.
- She plays.
- They are playing.
- She has played.
- They have played.
- They have been playing.
- She was playing.
- She had played.
- She had been playing.
- She will play.
- She will be coming.
- She will have come.
- She will have been playing.
- She may play.



- She would play.



### Forms of Verb





Transitive Verb- The election raised several issues. - I put my hand on the door.
Intransitive Verbs- My whole body ached. - Everything you see here belongs to me.
Reflexive Verb- He prided himself on his tidiness. - After the meeting, he introduced himself to the members.
Finite Verb- She is a good painter. - She sells her painting in Europe.
Non-Finite Verb- They want to hire a trainer. - The invitations were sent printed in gold.
Phrasal Verb- They agreed to let him into their secret. - Come on. I'll show you around.
Compound Verbs-I babysits when my wife goes out. - It is not advisable to hitchhike on your own.
Main and Auxiliary Verb- Do you read a newspaper? - Does he drive carefully? - Did she come yesterday?

#### 4.9.2 Extended Composition

##### Write a paragraph on the importance of one's mother tongue

"MotherTongue" is the language that a person learns from his infancy. It is the first language that a person learns so that he could socially engage with his parents and other relatives. Language is not only used to communicate but also to a huge extent; it is used to preserve the culture and refinement of their race.





Nowadays, the mother tongue is losing its importance against other languages. Although English is incomparable with any other languages, it is causing the death of some of the languages. The inseparable part of one's personality that should never be lost is one mother language. To preserve the rich cultural aspect of a person's existence the mother tongue should be preserved at any cost. Mother's tongue is very crucial for framing one's thinking and emotion. Learning one's mother tongue gives them a sense of self-worth and cultivates confidence in them. For a child to be able to participate in their classes and grow communication skills, the child must learn his mother tongue from his parents.

#### **4.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS**

- Nirmal Verma, 1929–2005 Archived 24 June 2008 at the Wayback Machine Frontline, Volume 22 – Issue 24, Nov. 19 – Dec. 02, 2005.
- Dwivedi, Ram Prakash (16 October 2020). "CCGS International Journal". Journal.globalculturz.org. Retrieved 17 October 2020.
- Ode to Nirmal Verma The Hindu, 6 November 2005.
- Nirmal Verma, India. Lettre-ulysses-award.org. Retrieved on 22 May 2016.
- AUTHOR SPEAKS: "I cater to several layers of sensibilities" The Tribune, 10 March 2002.

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:05</b>	<b>Wounded Plants</b>
<b>Wounded Plants</b> <b>Author Jagadish Chandra Bose</b> <b>(B) Playing the English Gentleman</b>	

**Lesson Structure**

- 5.1 Learning Objectives**
- 5.2 Introduction**
- 5.3 Main Body of the Text**
  - 5.3.1 About the Author**
  - 5.3.2 About the Essay**
- 5.4 Further Body of the text**
- 5.5 Check your Progress**
- 5.6 Summary**
- 5.7 Keywords**
- 5.8 Self -Assessment Questions (SAQs)**
- 5.9 Answers to Your Progress**
- 5.10 References and Suggested Readings**

**5.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES**

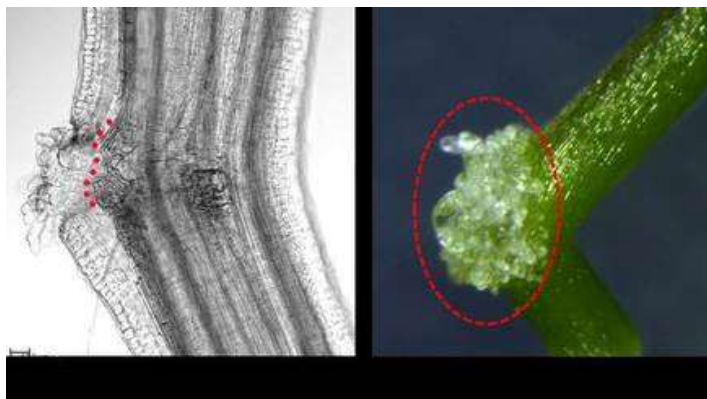
After going through this lesson you will be able to-



- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of a sound system.

## 5.2 INTRODUCTION

It's a hard life being a plant! From pathogens and herbivores to unfavorable weather, they are constantly injured or wounded and their sessile lifestyle only adds to the trouble. Despite all this, they heal and survive. How did they evolve such a great repair mechanism? What are the molecules and proteins aiding it? These were some of the questions an international team of researchers set out to answer and have now found some interesting mechanisms. Though it was known that plants communicate within their different parts and with other plants during injury, not much was known about how they handle the injury.



Wounded Plants

## 5.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

**Introduction**

Sir Jagadish Chandra Bose was a pioneer of modern science and scientific experiments in India. Dr. Bose realized the pain of wounded plants, the effect of one part of the wound on the other part of wounds, and how they heal themselves. He studied throughout his life and documented it in his various research papers and books. This chapter gives a brief description of his findings in this field.

**5.3.1 About the Author**

Sir Jagadish Chandra Bose was a pioneer of modern science and scientific experiments in India. He was a biologist, physicist, botanist, and an early writer of science fiction. He pioneered the investigation of radio and microwave optics made significant contributions to plant science and laid the foundations of experimental science in the Indian subcontinent. IEEE named him one of the fathers of radio science. He is also considered the father of Bengali science fiction and invented the crescograph, a device used to measure the growth of plants. He founded Bose Institute, a premier research institute of India and also one of its oldest. Established in 1917, the institute was the first interdisciplinary research center in Asia. He served as the Director of Bose institute from its inception until his death. His contributions to plant sciences remain significant today. His books include 'Response in the Living and Non Living'(1902), 'The Nervous Mechanism of Plants'(1926). In a 2004 BBC Poll, Bose was voted seventh Greatest Bengali of all time.

He compared the response of metals, plants, and animals to electrical, chemical, and mechanical stimulations and documented them in his book 'Response in the Living and Non Living' (1902). He proved that the plants feel pain and understand affection and other feelings.

**5.3.2 About the Essay**



The author starts his essay with a description of the tragedy during the First World War. This tragedy stalked over Western Europe. In this tragedy, a great number of human lives were lost. The fair fields of France and the bright sky was under a pall of battle smoke.

After giving the example of this tragedy, the writer says that we feel sympathy for those who died. Sympathy is that bond by which we realize the unity of all life. Multitudinous plants are surrounding us. Like the loss of human lives, there is the loss of many trees and plants also. Plants also suffer many shocks in life. But plants don't make an outcry because they are mute.

When a man receives a shock or a shock of any kind, his answering cry makes us realize that he is hurt, but a mute make no outcry. His pain can be realized by the convulsive movement of his limbs or his agonized looks. We can also feel this pain through fellow feeling (sympathy). The author gives the example of a frog. But it is a pity that we don't realize the pain of some living being because we have no sympathy for those creatures that are lower than us. Human beings doubt whether the lowly and the depressed also possess the fine sense of the exalted to feel the same joy and sorrow. Another feature that differentiates between them is the level of sympathy. Our sympathy is extended to those who are higher or equal to us. But it is hardly ever extended to the inferior. In this way, human attitude is discriminative to different grades of his species.

**Test of livingness**

The author gives a test to measure the livingness of creatures. He says that it depends on the test of Responsive movements. This responsive movement shows the difference between the living and the dead. The living answers to the shock from within, the liveliest gives the most energy. The answer of the strong is violent but the weakling will barely protest. But we are subject to change. Someday we are in a state of high exuberance and other times in a state of lowest depression. The total of these entire characteristic differentiates one individual from another.

**Three separate investigations were carried out on the effect of a wound on plants-**

1. First is the shock effect of the wound on growth. It retards or stops growth.
2. The second series of investigations show that death begins to spread from the cut end to the leaflet, and reaches the throbbing tissue which becomes permanently stilled on death.
3. The third investigation shows the experiments made to show the march of death. The cut leaflet which died in 24 hrs has now been kept alive for more than one week.

**Paralysis of sensibility**

Another series of investigations were carried out on the paralyzing effect of a severe wound. The paralysis of sensibility means that a plant remains depressed and irresponsive for several hours. The author describes an experiment on the Mimosa plant. A leaf of Mimosa was cut off from the plant remains depressed and irresponsive for several hours. The cutting of one leaf has caused a great shock to the parent plant, and an intense excitation spreads over to the distant organs. All the leaves remained depressed and irresponsive for several hours. But the detached leaf when placed in a nourishing solution soon recovers and held up his head with an attitude indicative of defiance, and the responses it gave were energetic. This lasted for 24 hours and after which a curious change crept in and the vigor of its responses began rapidly to wane. The leaf hitherto erect fell over and at last, it died.

**5.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT**

It is a little over four years now that the Embodiment of World Tragedy stalked over Western Europe. The fair field of France and the bright sky was under a pall of battle-smoke. Our sight could not penetrate through the dense gloom, and the mortal cry of the wounded and dying, drowned by the hoarse roar of a thousand did not reach our ear. But from the time the Sikh and the Pathan, the Gurkha and the



Bengali, the Mahratta and the Rajput flung themselves in front of battle from that day our perception has become intensified. The distant cry of those whose lifeblood has crimsoned the white field of snow has found a reverberating echo in our hearts.

What is that subtle bond by which all distances are bridged over, and by which an individual life becomes merged in larger life? Sympathy is that bond by which we come to realize the unity of all life. We see the spread of multitudinous plants, silent and seemingly impassive. They too like us are actors in the Cosmic drama of life, the plaything of destiny. In their checkered life, light, and darkness, the warmth of summer and frost of winter, drought and rain, the gentle breeze and whirling tornadoes, life and death alternate. Various shocks impinge in them, but no cry is raised in the answer. I shall nevertheless try to decipher some chapters of their life history.

When a man receives a blow or shock of any kind, his answering cry makes us realize that he is hurt, but a mute makes no outcry. How do we realize his sufferings? We know it by agonized look by the convulsive movement of his limbs, and through fellow-feeling realize his pain. When a frog is struck it does not cry, but its limbs show convulsive movement. But from this, it does not follow that the frog is not hurt, for some would urge that there is a great gap between us and the lower animals. One who feels for the humblest of His creatures alone knows whether the frog is hurt or not. Human sympathy always aspires: it is sometimes extended to equals, hardly ever to inferiors. And so it happens that many would doubt, whether the lowly and the depressed possess the fine sense of the exalted to feel the same joy and sorrow and to resent social tyranny.

When the human attitude is so finely discriminative as regards different grades of his species, it might be extravagant to believe that the frog could have any conscious of pain. A concession might however be made that the frog perceives a shock to which it responds by convulsive movements. It is as well that we should be careful about the use of terms for an eminent biologist insisted that animals never felt pain: when



an oyster is swallowed alive, it did not, according to him, feel any pain but rather a sensation of grateful warmth at contact with the alimentary tract. The question will remain undecided for no one has as yet returned from the gastric cavity of the tiger to expatiate on the exquisite sensation.

Responsive movements being a test of life, we shall try to construct a scale with which the height of livingness may be measured. What is the difference between the living and the dead? The living answers to the shock from within; the liveliest gives the most energetic, the torpid or dying the feeblest, and the dead no answer at all. Thus life may be tested by shocks from within, the size of the answer is the gauge of vitality. The answer of the strongest will be violent and almost explosive in intensity, while the weakling will barely protest. The responsive movements may be recorded by a suitable apparatus. The successive responses to similar shocks will remain uniform if the living tissue always remained the same.

But the living organism is always in a state of change for the environment is always building us anew, and we are changing every day of our life. We are thus subject to change, someday we are in a state of high exuberance, and 'other time in a state of lowest depression: we pass through numerous phases between two extremes. Not merely does the present modify, but there is also the subtle impression of memory of the past. The total of all these characterizes one individual from another. How is the hidden to be made manifest? To test the genuineness of a coin, we strike it and the sound response betrays the true from the false. The genuine rings true and the other gives a false note. In this way perhaps the inner history of different lives may be revealed by shocks and the resulting response.

Three separate investigations have been carried out on the effect of the wound on plants: The first is the shock effect of the wound on growth: this generally speaking retards or arrests growth. In the second series of investigations, the change of spontaneous pulsation of the leaflet of the Telegraph plant was recorded. Death begins to spread from the cut end of the leaflet, reaches the throbbing tissue which





becomes permanently stilled on cessation of life. Experiments are in progress of arrest their march of death, and the cut, leaflet which died in 24 hours has now been kept alive for more than a week.

Another series of investigations were carried out on the paralyzing effect of a severe wound. A leaf of Mimosa was cut off from the plant, and the subsequent histories of the wounded plant and the detached leaf are curiously different. The cutting of one of its leaves had caused a great shock to the parent, and an intense excitation spreads over to the distant organs. All the leaves remained depressed and irresponsive for several hours. From this state of the paralyzed sensibility, the plant gradually recovers and the leaves begin to show returning sensitiveness. The detached leaf, when placed in a nourishing solution soon recovers, and holds up its head with an attitude indicative of defiance, and the responses it gives are energetic. This lasts for twenty-four hours, after which a curious change creeps in the vigor of its responses begins rapidly to wane. The leaf hitherto erect falls over; death had, at last, asserted its mastery.

### **5.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**

**Answer the following questions in 25-30 words**

1. How can we realize the pain of the sufferings of the mute?
2. Why do we not realize the pain of some living beings?
3. What characterizes individuals from one another?

#### **Answers-**

1. When a man receives a shock or blow of any kind, his answering cry makes us realize that he is hurt. But a mute make no outcry. We can know by his agonized look or by the convulsive movement of his limbs. We can also realize this pain by fellow-feeling.
2. We do not realize the pain of some living beings because we have no sympathy for those creatures that are lower than us. So the human beings doubt



whether the lowly or the depressed possess the fine sense of the exalted to feel the same joy and sorrow, and to resent social tyranny.

3. The degree of shock and reaction to pain characterizes individuals from one another. Another feature that differentiates between them is the level of sympathy. Our sympathy is extended to those who are higher or equal to us. But it is hardly extended to the inferiors.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

1. What is the 'second series of investigation' referred to in the essay?
2. What is 'paralysis of sensibility'? How is it measured?
3. What is the significance of these three series of investigations?

**Answers-**

1. The scientists carried out three separate series of investigations to study the effect of the wound on plants. In the second series of investigations, the change of spontaneous pulsation of the leaflet of the Telegraph plant was recorded. Death begins to spread from the cut end of the leaflet and reaches the throbbing tissue which becomes permanently stilled on death. Experiments are being made to slow the march of death. The cut leaflet which died in 24 hours had been kept alive for more than one week.
2. The paralysis of sensibility means that a plant remains depressed and irresponsive for several hours. Several investigations were carried out to see the paralyzing effect of a severe wound on a plant. A leaf of Mimosa was cut off from a plant, and the subsequent histories of the wounded plant and the detached leaf curiously. The cutting of one of its leaves had caused a great shock to the parent plant, and an intense excitation spreads over to the distant organs. All the leaves remained depressed and irresponsive for several hours.
3. Three separate investigations were carried out on the effect of wounds on plants. These experiments were conducted to see the effect of the wound on



plants. The first investigation was the shock effect of the wound on growth. In the second investigation, a change of spontaneous pulsation on a leaf was recorded. The third investigation was carried out to see the effect of the paralyzing effect of the wound on plants. This series of investigations showed that plants also have life and the response to wounds or shocks. The experiments showed that the various parts of a plant experience death just as living beings experience.

### Comprehension passage

#### Passage 1

Three separate investigations have been carried out on the effect of the wound on plants: The first is the shock effect of the wound on growth: this generally speaking retards or arrests growth. In the second series of investigations, the change of spontaneous pulsation of the leaflet of the Telegraph plant was recorded. Death begins to spread from the cut end of the leaflet, reaches the throbbing tissue which becomes permanently stilled on cessation of life. Experiments are in progress of arrest their march of death, and the cut, leaflet which died in 24 hours has now been kept alive for more than a week.

#### Questions-

1. How many separate investigations have been carried out on the effect of the wound on plants?
2. What was the first investigation about?
3. On which plant was the investigation carried on?
4. When did the death become permanently stilled?

#### Answers-

1. Three separate investigations have been carried out on the effect of wound plants
2. The first investigation was about the shock effect of the wound on growth.



3. It was carried out on the Telegraph plant.
4. The death becomes stilled permanently on cessation of life.

**Passage 2**

What is that subtle bond by which all distances are bridged over, and by which an individual life becomes merged in larger life? Sympathy is that bond by which we come to realize the unity of all life. Before we are spread multitudinous plants, silent and seemingly impassive. They too like us are actors in the Cosmic drama of life, the plaything of destiny. In their checkered life, light, and darkness, the warmth of summer and frost of winter, drought and rain, the gentle breeze and whirling tornadoes, life and death alternate. Various shocks impinge in them, but no cry is raised in the answer. I shall nevertheless try to decipher some chapters of their life history.

**Questions-**

1. What is the bond with which all distances are bridged over?
2. How do we realize the unity of life?
3. How did the plants look like?
4. Who does not raise a cry in answer to shocks?

**Answers-**

1. Sympathy is the bond with which all distances are bridged over.
2. We realize the unity of life through sympathy.
3. They looked like the actors in the Cosmic drama of life.
4. Plants do not raise a cry in answer to shocks.

**Passage 3**

When the human attitude is so finely discriminative as regards different grades of his species, it might be extravagant to believe that the frog could have any conscious of pain. A concession might however be made that the frog perceives a shock to which it responds by convulsive movements. It is as well that we should be careful about



the use of terms for an eminent biologist insisted that animals never felt pain: when an oyster is swallowed alive, it did not, according to him, feel any pain but rather a sensation of grateful warmth at contact with the alimentary tract. The question will remain undecided for no one has as yet returned from the gastric cavity of the tiger to expatiate on the exquisite sensation.

**Questions-**

1. What makes us realize that a man is hurt?
2. How do we know the suffering of a mute?
3. Does a frog cry when it is struck?
4. What does the author say of human sympathy?

**Answers-**

1. His outcry makes us realize that a man is hurt.
2. We know the suffering of a mute by his convulsive movements.
3. No, it does not cry.
- 4 He says that human sympathy always aspires

**5.6 SUMMARY**

The writer says that we feel sympathy for those who died. Sympathy is that bond by which we realize the unity of all life. Multitudinous plants are surrounding us. Like the loss of human lives, there is the loss of many trees and plants also. Plants also suffer many shocks in life. But plants don't make an outcry because they are mute.

When a man receives a shock or a shock of any kind, his answering cry makes us realize that he is hurt, but a mute make no outcry. His pain can be realized by the convulsive movement of his limbs or his agonized looks. We can also feel this pain through fellow feeling (sympathy). The author gives the example of a frog. But it is a pity that we don't realize the pain of some living being because we have no sympathy for those creatures that are lower than us. Human beings doubt whether the lowly and the depressed also possess the fine sense of the exalted to



feel the same joy and sorrow. Another feature that differentiates between them is the level of sympathy. Our sympathy is extended to those who are higher or equal to us. But it is hardly ever extended to the inferior. In this way, human attitude is discriminative to different grades of his species. The author gives a test to measure the livingness of creatures. He says that it depends on the test of Responsive movements. This responsive movement shows the difference between the living and the dead. The living answers to the shock from within, the liveliest gives the most energy. The answer of the strong is violent but the weakling will barely protest. But we are subject to change. Someday we are in a state of high exuberance and other times in a state of lowest depression. The total of these entire characteristic differentiates one individual from another. The paralysis of sensibility means that a plant remains depressed and irresponsible for several hours. The author describes an experiment on the Mimosa plant. A leaf of Mimosa was cut off from the plant remains depressed and irresponsible for several hours. The cutting of one leaf has caused a great shock to the parent plant, and an intense excitation spreads over to the distant organs. All the leaves remained depressed and irresponsible for several hours. But the detached leaf when placed in a nourishing solution soon recovers and held up his head with an attitude indicative of defiance, and the responses it gave were energetic. This lasted for 24 hours and after which a curious change crept in and the vigor of its responses began rapidly to wane. The leaf hitherto erect fell over and at last, it died.

### 5.7 KEYWORDS

Transcribe the following words-

- Alternate
- Distance
- Battle
- Drought
- Dense



- Fair
- Hoarse
- Perception
- Sky
- Sympathy
- Warmth
- Field
- Intensity
- Realize
- Smoke
- Thousand
- White
- Bright
- Eco
- Gentle
- Echo
- Merge
- Silent
- Subtle
- Too

**5.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS(SAQ'S)**

**Find out the synonymous of the following words-**

- Deadly-fatal
- Rough –hoarse
- Cried- Roared
- Go through-penetrate
- Far off-distance

**Find out the antonyms of the following words-**

- Dead –living
- Unconscious-conscious
- Superior-inferior
- Inhuman-human

**Find out the antonyms of the following words-**

- Highest quality-supreme
- Providing nourishment-nourishing
- Do not comply with-follow
- Made evident-manifest
- Shocking and serious-agonizing
- Natural and instinctive-spontaneous

**Elaborate on the following terms**

- Cosmic-related to the whole universe
- Tornados-violently destructive wind storm occurring over land
- Impinge-to make an impression
- Decipher –to read with difficulty
- Convulsive-affective by involuntary jerky muscular contraction

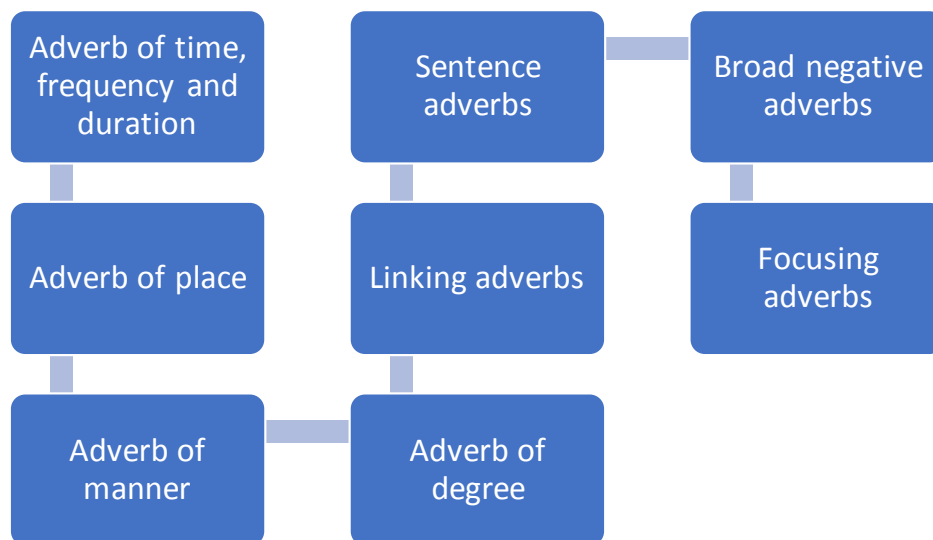
**5.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS****5.9.1 Language activity****What is an adverb?**

The adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. An adverb can also modify a sentence.





### Types of Adverbs



### Formation of adverbs-

- The final y changes to i: happy, happily
- The final 'e' is retained: extreme, extremely
- Adjectives ending in able / 'ible' drop the final e and add y: capable, capably; sensible, sensibly.
- Adjectives ending in a vowel +l follow the usual rule: beautiful, beautifully; final, finally.

### Position of Adverbs

- **Mid position** (before the verb, or part of the verb)
  1. Mahesh **suddenly** drove off.
  2. We have **never** been stopped by the police.
- **End position** (at the end of a clause)
  1. Mahesh drove off **suddenly**.
  2. Mahesh reached **late**.



- **Initial position** (at the beginning of a clause)
  1. **Suddenly** Mahesh drove off.
  2. **Tomorrow** we shall have a party.

### Exercise

#### Pick out the adverbs in the following sentences

- This is a **very** sweet mango.
- The milkman came **again**.
- The puppy followed Mahesh **everywhere**.
- You may be **partly** right but does it solve our problem.
- **Where** is Raju?

### 5.9.2 Extended Composition

**Write a short story of about 150 words narrating the life of a plant, from its birth to its death, incorporating its joyful and painful experiences.**

Plants are the natural resource of our life. Without plants, we cannot survive. Apart from giving food, plants are important in many other ways. If there are no plants, we will face a shortage of oxygen in the future. Lack of oxygen in the atmosphere may lead to global warming. In addition to this, plants add beauty to the landscape. The life of a plant passes through many stages. The first is the seed growth. For a seed to grow into a healthy plant it needs plenty of water and light. The plant life cycle begins with a seed. The seed will sprout and produce a tiny, immature plant called a seedling. The seedling will grow to adulthood and form a mature plant. The mature plant will reproduce by forming new seeds which will begin the next cycle. This life cycle is generally used by flowering plants. The flowering plant include grasses, trees, shrubs, and, of course, flowers. There are also lower types of plants including ferns and mosses. These also have a life cycle but they do not produce seeds. These produce other reproductive cells called spores.



**Compare J.C. Bose's views with those of Vandana Shiva's and write a paragraph of about 150 words on the need to have a greater sensitivity towards plants and the environment.**

All living things that live on this earth come under the environment. Whether they live on land or water they are part of the environment. The environment also includes air, water, sunlight, plants, animals, etc. Moreover, the earth is considered the only planet in the universe that supports life. The environment can be understood as a blanket that keeps life on the planet safe and sound. We truly cannot understand the real worth of the environment. But we can estimate some of its importance that can help us understand its importance. It plays a vital role in keeping living things healthy in the environment. Likewise, it maintains the ecological balance that will keep check of life on earth. It provides food, shelter, air, and fulfills all the human needs whether big or small. Moreover, the entire life support of humans depends wholly on the environmental factors. Also, it helps in maintaining various life cycles on earth. Most importantly, our environment is the source of natural beauty and is necessary for maintaining physical and mental health.

#### 5.10 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

- "Bose". Random House Webster's Unabridged Dictionary.
- Editorial Board (2013). Sir Jagdish Chandra Bose. Edinburgh, Scotland: Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc. ISBN 9781593392925.
- "A versatile genius". Frontline. Vol. 21 no. 24. The Hindu. 20 November 2004.
- Chatterjee, Santimay and Chatterjee, Enakshi, Satyendranath Bose, 2002 reprint, p. 5, National Book Trust, ISBN 81-237-0492-5
- Sen, A. K. (1997). "Sir J.C. Bose and radio science". Microwave Symposium Digest. IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium.



Denver, CO: IEEE. pp. 557–  
560. doi:10.1109/MWSYM.1997.602854. ISBN 0-7803-3814-6.

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:05</b>	<b>Playing about the English gentleman</b>
<b>Playing about the English Gentleman</b> <b>Author –M. K. Gandhi</b>	

**Lesson Structure****5.1 Learning Objectives****5.2 Introduction****5.3 Main Body of the Text****5.3.1 About the Author****5.3.2 About the Essay****5.4 Further Body of the text****5.5 Check your Progress****5.6 Summary****5.7 Keywords****5.8 Self -Assessment Questions (SAQs)****5.9 Answers to Your Progress****5.9.1 Language Activity****5.9.2 Extended Composition****5.10 References/ Suggested Readings****5.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES**



After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

## 5.2 INTRODUCTION

In *Playing the English Gentleman* by Mahatma Gandhi we have the theme of identity, acceptance, change, perception, and tradition. Taken from his autobiography 'The Story of My Experiments with Truth' the reader realizes after reading the essay that Gandhi may be exploring the theme of identity. There is a sense that Gandhi while a student in England wishes to fit in with his peers even though he may live a lifestyle that would be deemed unfamiliar to an English gentleman (being a vegetarian for example). Regardless of this Gandhi does go some way to give off the appearance of an English gentleman. Going as far as getting dancing lessons, changing his attire, learning the violin, and getting elocution lessons. All of which Gandhi hopes will help him to fit in with his surroundings and be accepted by others. However, there does come a point when Gandhi realizes that he is living a lie and that he is not only fooling himself but also denying his tradition or the fact that he is an Indian and not an Englishman.

## 5.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

At the beginning of the essay, Gandhi says that he was vegetarian from his birth. His faith in vegetarian food becomes deeper after reading many books on it. After reading books like Howard William's **The Ethics of Diet**, Dr. Anna Kingsford's, **The Perfect way in Diet**, Dr. Allison's **Writing On Health and Hygiene**, he found that all philosophers and prophets from the past to the present age were vegetarians. As a result of reading all this literature, dietetic experiments came to take an important



place in his life. But in his later life, religion became the supreme motive. Gandhi's friend in England had a great love for him. He was worried for him for various reasons.

He thought-

1. Gandhi's health would remain weak if he did not eat meat in England.
2. He might be considered a duffer in English society.
3. He was afraid lest Gandhi should remain busy in experiments and forget his works as he was busy reading books on vegetarians.

So he started his efforts to reform him. He tried to make Gandhi Ji give up vegetarian food. But he did not succeed. However, this did not affect their relationship and they continued to be good friends.

Gandhi narrates some incidents in his autobiography 'The Story of My Experiments with Truth' chapter 16. He says that one day; his friend invited him to a big restaurant. The friend had planned to take him to this restaurant. The friend had planned to take him to this restaurant so that he would not ask questions because of his modesty. The first course was soup. He dared not ask his friend so he called the waiter to inquire if the soup was a vegetable soup. His friend became angry and told him to go to some other restaurant if he wanted vegetable soup. Gandhi Ji came out and went to some vegetarian restaurant close by but it was closed. So he had to remain hungry that night.

That was the last tussle he had with his friend. But it did not affect their friendship. Gandhi Ji could see and appreciated the love by which all his friend's efforts were actuated and Gandhi's respect for him was all the greater on account of their differences in thoughts and action.

Gandhi did not want to give up vegetarianism. But he decided to make up for his vegetarianism by cultivating other accomplishments that fitted the English society. He tried to become an English gentleman. He got English clothes. He



purchased a hat. He wasted 10 pounds on a fashionable suit. He asked his brother to send him a double watch chain of gold. He learned the art of using a tie and correctly parting his hair. He started taking lessons on dancing, learning French, playing the violin, and learning elocution. But his efforts did not prove successful and he gave up his attempts.

Gandhi Ji remembered the fable of the recluse. In the fable, the recluse kept a cat to keep off the rats and then a cow to feed the cat with milk and a man to keep the cow and so on. He felt that his ambitions also grew like that recluse. He thought to learn violin and for this, he spent money on violin. He engaged another teacher to teach him elocution. He made him buy a book on elocution. And at last, he realized the futility of these things and gave up his efforts to become an English gentleman.

Gandhi Ji thought that he had not to spend a lifetime in England. So there was no use of learning elocution. And dancing could not make a gentleman of him. He was a student and ought to go on with his studies. He should qualify himself to join the Inns of Court. He thought that if his character made a gentleman of him, so much the better.

After that, he gave up these useless attempts and concentrated on his studies and thus became a student. He expressed his thoughts in a letter to his elocution teacher. He requested his teacher to excuse him from further lessons. He wrote a similar letter to the dancing teacher. He made the same request to his violin teacher. In this way, he freed himself from the lessons.

### **5.3.1 About the Author**





Mohandas Karam Chand Gandhi, also known as Mahatma Gandhi, was an Indian lawyer, anti-colonial nationalist, and political ethicist, who employed non-violent resistance to lead the successful campaign for India's independence from British rule and also inspired movements for civil rights and freedom across the world.

The honorific Mahatma (great soul) first applied to him in 1914 in South Africa is now used throughout the world.

Gandhi Ji led nationwide campaigns for easing poverty, expanding women's rights, building religious and ethnic amity, ending untouchability, and above all, for achieving 'Swaras' or self-rule. He was a good writer also. His autobiography is entitled 'The Story of my Experiments with Truth'.

Some Indians thought Gandhi was too accommodating. Among them was Nathuram Godse a Hindu nationalist, who assassinated Gandhi on 30 Jan 1948 by firing three bullets in his chest.

Gandhi's birthday on 2<sup>nd</sup> October is commemorated in India as Gandhi Jayanti a national holiday and worldwide as the international day of Non-Violence. Gandhi is commonly though not formally, considered the father of the Nation in India and was commonly called Bapu. Gandhi did not receive the Nobel Peace prize although he was nominated five times between 1937 and 1948.

### 5.3.2 About the essay



This essay has been taken from Mahatma Gandhi's autobiography 'The Story of My Experiments with Truth'. It was published in 1927. This excerpt appears in the fifteenth chapter of the first part of his autobiography. Here Gandhi narrates his experiences during the time he was in England.

#### **5.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT**

My faith in vegetarianism grew on me from day today. Salt's book whetted my appetite for dietetic studies. I went for all the books available on vegetarianism and read them. One of these, Howard Williams' *The Ethics of Diet*, was a 'biographical history of literature and humane dietetics from the earliest period to the present day'. It tried to make out, that all philosophers and prophets from Pythagoras and Jesus down to those of the present age were vegetarians.

Dr. Anna Kingsford's *The Perfect Way in Diet* was also an attractive book. Dr. Allison's writings on health and hygiene were likewise helpful. He advocated a curative system based on the regulation of the dietary of patients. Himself a vegetarian, he prescribed for his patient a strictly vegetarian diet. The result of reading books on vegetarianism was that experiments with my diet came to take an important place in my life. Health was the principal consideration of those experiments, to begin with. But later on, religion became the supreme motive.

Meanwhile, my friend had not ceased to worry about me. His love for me led him to think that, if I persisted on my objections to meat-eating, I should not only develop a weak constitution but should remain a duffer, because I should never feel at home in English society. When he came to know that I had begun to interest myself in books of vegetarianism, he was afraid lest these studies should muddle my head; that I should fritter my life away in experiments, forgetting my work, and become a crank. He, therefore, made one last effort to reform me.

He one day invited me to go to the theater. Before the play, we were to dine together at the Holborn Restaurant, to be a palatial place and the first big restaurant I had been to since the Victoria Hotel. The stay at that hotel has scarcely been a helpful



experience, for I had not lived there with my wits about me. The friend had planned to take me to this restaurant imagining that modesty would forbid any questions. And it was a very big company of diners in the midst of which my friend and I sat sharing a table between us.

The first course was soup. I wondered it may be made up of, but dared not ask the friend about it., therefore summoned the waiter. My friend saw the movement and sternly asked across the table what the matter was. With considerable hesitation, I told him that I wanted to inquire if the soup was vegetable soup. 'You are too clumsy for a decent society,' he passionately exclaimed. 'If you cannot behave yourself, you had better go. Feed in some other restaurant and await me outside.' This delighted me. Out I went. There was a vegetarian restaurant close by, but it was closed. So I went without food that night. I accompanied my friend to the theatre, but he never said a word about the scene I had created. On my part of course there was nothing to say.

That was the last friendly tussle we had. It did not affect our relations in the least. I could see and appreciate the love by which all my friend's efforts were actuated, and my respect for him was all the greater on account of our differences in thought and action.

But I decided that I should put him to ease, that I should assure him that I would be clumsy no more, but try to become polished and make up for my vegetarianism by cultivating other accomplishments which fitted one for polite society. And for this purpose, I undertook the all too impossible task of becoming an English gentleman.

The clothes after the Bombay cut that I was wearing were, I thought, unsuitable for English society, and got new ones at the Army and Navy Stores. I also went for a chimney-pot hat costing nineteen shillings- an excessive price in those days. Not content with this, I wasted ten pounds on an evening suit made in Bond Street, the center of fashionable life in London; and got my noble-hearted brother to send me a double watch- chain of gold. It was not correct to wear a ready-made tie and I



learned the art of tying one for myself. While in India, the mirror had been a luxury permitted on the days when the family barber shaved me. Here I wasted ten minutes every day before a huge mirror, watching myself arranging my tie and correctly parting my hair. My hair was by no means soft, and every day it meant a regular struggle with the brush to keep it in position. Each time the hat was put on and off, the hand would automatically move towards the head to adjust the hair, not to mention the other civilized habits of the hand now and then operating for the same purpose when sitting in polished society.

As if all this were not enough to make me look the thing, I directed my attention to other details that were supposed to go towards the making of an English gentleman. I was told I needed to take lessons in dancing, French and elocution. French was not only the language of neighboring France, but it was the lingua franca of the Continent over which I had desired to travel. I decided to take dancing lessons at a class and paid down 3 Euros as fees for the term. I must have taken about 6 lessons in three weeks. But it was beyond me to achieve anything like rhythmic motion. I could not follow the piano and hence found it impossible to keep time. What then was I to do?

The recluse in the fable kept a cat to keep off rats, and then a cow to feed the cat with milk, and a man to keep the cow, and so on. My ambition also grew like the family of a recluse. I thought I should learn to play the violin to cultivate an ear for western music. So I invested 3 Euros in a violin and something more in fees. I sought a third teacher to give me elocution lessons and paid him a preliminary fee of a guinea. He recommended Bell's Standard Elocutionist as the textbook, which I purchased. And I began with a speech of Pitt's.

But Mr. Bell rang the bell of alarm in my ear and I awoke.

I had not to spend a lifetime in England, I said to myself. When then was the use of learning elocution? And how could dancing make a gentleman out of me? The violin I could learn in India. I was a student and ought to go on with my studies. I should



qualify myself to join the Inns of Court. If my character made a gentleman of me, so much the better. Otherwise, I should forego the ambition.

These and similar thoughts possessed me, and I expressed them in a letter which I addressed to the elocution teacher, requesting him to excuse me from further lessons. I had taken only two or three. I wrote a similar letter to the dancing teacher and went personally to the violin teacher with a request to dispose of the violin for any price it might fetch. She was rather friendly to me, so I told her how I had discovered that I was pursuing a false idea. She encouraged me in the determination to make a complete change.

This infatuation must have lasted about three months. The punctiliousness in dress persisted for years. But henceforward I became a student.

### 5.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

#### Answer the questions in 25-30 words

1. How did Gandhi Ji's faith in vegetarianism grow?
2. How did Gandhiji extricate himself from all the lessons?

#### Answers-

1. At the beginning of the essay, Gandhi says that he was a vegetarian. But his faith in vegetarianism grew because of some books. After reading Salt's book he acquired more books on vegetarianism and read them. He found that all philosophers and prophets from the past to the present age were vegetarians.
2. Gandhiji expressed his thoughts in a letter that he wrote to his elocution teacher. He requested his teacher to excuse him from further lessons. He wrote a similar letter to his dance teacher. He made the same request to the violin teacher. In this way, he extricated himself from the lessons.

#### Answer the questions in 75-100 words

1. Describe the relationship that Gandhiji shared with his friend.



2. Describe some of the habits that Gandhiji had cultivated which were at variance with what he encountered in Britain.
3. Describe Gandhiji's attempts to inculcate the qualities of an English gentleman. How did these attempts turn out?
4. 'But henceforth I became a student'. Trace the course of events and thoughts that led Gandhiji to arrive at this.

**Answers-**

1. Gandhiji's friend loved him deeply. He was worried that if Gandhiji did not eat meat, his health would remain weak. Moreover, he would be considered a duffer in English society. When he knew Gandhiji was reading books on vegetarianism, he was afraid lest Gandhiji should remain busy in these experiments and forget his work. So he tried to one last effort to reform him. He had a great love for Gandhiji. He tried to make Gandhiji give up vegetarianism. But did not succeed. However, this did not affect their friendship and they continued to be good friends.
2. Gandhiji did not like eating meat. He was a strict vegetarian. He would remain hungry but would not eat a non-vegetarian diet. He followed his habit even when he was in England. Gandhiji was particularly influenced by Dr. Anna Kingsford's *The Perfect Way in Diet* and Dr. Allison's writings on health and hygiene. As a result of reading all this literature, dietetic experiments came to take an important place in his life. But later on, religion became the supreme motive. Gandhiji acquired these habits and these were at variance with what he encountered in England.
3. He tried to become an English gentleman. His clothes were unsuitable for English society. He got English clothes. He also purchased a hat. He wasted 10 pounds on a fashionable suit. He asked his brother to send him a double watch chain of gold. He learned the art of using a tie. He wasted ten minutes every day in various fields. These fields were



dancing, learning French, learning to play the violin, and learning elocution. But his efforts did not prove successful and he gave up his attempts.

### Comprehensive passages

#### Passage-1

Gandhiji realized that he had not to spend a lifetime in England. So, there was no use of learning elocution. And dancing could not make a gentleman of him. He could learn the violin even in India. He thought that he was a student and ought to go on with his studies he should qualify himself to join the Inns of Court. If his character made a gentleman of him, so much the better. Otherwise, he should forego the ambition. He gave up these attempts and concentrated on his studies. Thus he became a student. He one day invited me to go to the theater. Before the play, we were to dine together at the Holborn Restaurant, to be a palatial place and the first big restaurant I had been to since the Victoria Hotel. The stay at that hotel has scarcely been a helpful experience, for I had not lived there with my wits about me. The friend had planned to take me to this restaurant imagining that modesty would forbid any questions. And it was a very big company of diners in the midst of which my friend and I sat sharing a table between us.

#### Questions-

1. To which restaurant did Gandhiji's friend take him?
2. How was the restaurant?
3. What had his friend thought?
4. Where did Gandhiji and his friend sit?

#### Answers-

1. He took Gandhiji to the Holborn Restaurant.
2. It was a palatial restaurant.
3. He had thought that modesty would forbid any questions.



4. His friend and Gandhiji sat sharing a table between them.

**Passage 2-**

The clothes after the Bombay cut that I was wearing were, I thought, unsuitable for English society, and got new ones at the Army and Navy Stores. I also went for a chimney-pot hat costing nineteen shillings- an excessive price in those days. Not content with this, I wasted ten pounds on an evening suit made in Bond Street, the center of fashionable life in London; and got my noble-hearted brother to send me a double watch- chain of gold. It was not correct to wear a ready-made tie and I learned the art of tying one for myself. While in India, the mirror had been a luxury permitted on the days when the family barber shaved me. Here I wasted ten minutes every day before a huge mirror, watching myself arranging my tie and correctly parting my hair. My hair was by no means soft, and every day it meant a regular struggle with the brush to keep it in position. Each time the hat was put on and off, the hand would automatically move towards the head to adjust the hair, not to mention the other civilized habits of the hand now and then operating for the same purpose when sitting in polished society.

**Questions-**

1. From where did Gandhiji buy new clothes?
2. What kind of hat did he purchase?
3. Who sent him a double watch- chain of gold?
4. Where did he waste ten minutes daily?

**Answers-**

1. He bought new clothes at the Army and Navy Stores.
2. He purchased a chimney-pot hat.
3. His brother sent him a double watch- chain of gold.
4. He wasted ten minutes daily before the mirror.

**Passage 3-**





The recluse in the fable kept a cat to keep off rats, and then a cow to feed the cat with milk, and a man to keep the cow, and so on. My ambition also grew like the family of a recluse. I thought I should learn to play the violin to cultivate an ear for western music. So I invested 3 Euros in a violin and something more in fees. I sought a third teacher to give me elocution lessons and paid him a preliminary fee of a guinea. He recommended Bell's Standard Elocutionist as the textbook, which I purchased. And I began with a speech of Pitt's.

**Questions-**

1. Why did the recluse keep a cat?
2. How did Gandhiji's ambitions grow?
3. How much did he invest in the violin?
4. Why did he seek a third teacher?

**Answers-**

1. The recluse in the fable kept a cat to keep off the rats.
2. His ambitions grew to like the family of the recluse.
3. He invested 3 Euros in violin.
4. He sought a third teacher to give him elocution lessons.

**Passage 4-**

These and similar thoughts possessed me, and I expressed them in a letter which I addressed to the elocution teacher, requesting him to excuse me from further lessons. I had taken only two or three. I wrote a similar letter to the dancing teacher and went personally to the violin teacher with a request to dispose of the violin for any price it might fetch. She was rather friendly to me, so I told her how I had discovered that I was pursuing a false idea. She encouraged me in the determination to make a complete change.

This infatuation must have lasted about three months. The punctiliousness in dress persisted for years. But henceforward I became a student.

**Questions-**

1. What did he write to his elocution teacher?
2. What request did he make to his violin teacher?
3. What was the response of the violin teacher?
4. How long did the infatuation last?

**Answers-**

1. He requested him to excuse him for further lessons.
2. He requested her to dispose of the violin for any price it might fetch.
3. She encouraged him in the determination to make a complete change.
4. This infatuation must have lasted about three months.

**5.6 SUMMARY**

This essay has been taken from Mahatma Gandhi's autobiography 'The Story of My Experiments with Truth'. It was published in 1927. This excerpt appears in the fifteenth chapter of the first part of his autobiography. Here Gandhi narrates his experiences during the time he was in England.

**5.7 KEYWORDS**

**Give the phonetic transcription of the following words-**

- Faith
- Vegetarianism
- Ethics
- Biographical
- Literature
- Human
- Period
- Philosopher
- Prophet



- Attractive
- Hygiene
- Advocate
- System
- regulation

### 5.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTION(SAQ,S)

- What is a Noun?
- What is a Verb?
- How a noun can be converted into a verb or a verb can be converted into a noun.

### 5.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS

Some words can be used both as a noun and verbs. Here are some such words are taken from an essay. Use them in sentences of your own, in both their noun and verb forms

#### Stay

Stay (Noun) I met Ravi during my stay in Delhi.

Stay (Verb) He stayed in my house when he came here.

#### Advocate

Advocate (Noun) He is an advocate.

Advocate (verb) He advocated his case.

#### Result

Result (Noun) My result is late.

Result (Verb) His nonsense resulted in a hot dispute.

#### Interest

Interest (Noun) He is showing interest in studies.



Interest (Verb) I am not interested in gossips.

### Muddle

Muddle (Noun) His theory has created a muddle in my mind.

Muddle (Verb) His nonsense has muddled my mind.

### Change the following words into adverbs.

- Persistent-----persistently
- Deciding-----Decidedly
- Evident-----Evidently
- Modest-----Modestly
- Hesitant-----Hesitantly
- Passionate-----Passionately
- Easy -----Easily
- Excessive-----Excessively
- Soft -----Softly
- Direct-----Directly
- Supposed-----Supposedly
- Personal-----Personally

### Give synonyms and antonyms of the following words-

Words	Synonyms	Antonyms
Duffer	Fool	Wise
Interest	Concern	Indifferent
Appreciate	Praise	Criticize
Polite	Courteous	Rude
Tie	Join	Untie

**Explain the following terms/words/phrases.**

1. Vegetarianism- A person who does not eat meat.
2. All-too-impossible -Which is completely impossible .
3. Creating a scene- Creating a confusing situation.
4. Gentleman- well-cultured person
5. Now and then- frequently

**Make nouns from the following verbs-**

Verb	Noun
Grow	Growth
Persist	persistence
Sit	Seat
Behave	Behavior
Appreciate	appreciation
Decide	Decision
Learn	Learning
Teach	Teacher
Write	Writer
Direct	Direction
Consider	Consideration
Dine	Dinner
Discover	Discovery
Direct	Directly



### 5.9.1 Language Activity

Tense –when we make a statement, we usually need to indicate whether we are referring to a situation that exists now, existed in the past, or is likely to exist in the future. This point of time is usually indicated by the verb group in the sentence and it is usually called Tense.

#### Past tense-

Past simple	Past Continuous Tense	Past Perfect tense	Past Perfect Continuous Tense
The simple past tense is used to say that event occurred at a particular time in the past	The most common Use of the past continuous is to talk about what was already happening at a particular past moment	We use the past perfect tense to go back to an earlier past time, to talk about things that had happened at the time we are talking about.	The past perfect continuous tense is not used with verbs that are not in continuous forms, except with want and sometimes.
For example- 1. My friend visited our house last year.	For example- 1. Ram was dancing, but when she saw me he stopped.	1. I explained that I had forgotten my keys.	For example- The boy was delighted with his new air gun. He had wanted one for a long time.
2. The prime minister of Bhutan flew into Delhi yesterday to	2. The phone rang while I was having my bath, as usual.	2. When he had shut the windows, we opened the door of the cage.	2. He had tried five times to get her on the phone.



start his visit to India.			
3. Throughout 1999, he studied with us in a central library.	3. when Ramnish arrived I telephoned Harish (comparison)	3. When I had written all my letters, I did some gardening.	He had been trying to get her on the phone.
About fifty miles from the university there was one of India's most famous and ancient Hindu temples.	4. It happened while I was living in the capital last year.	4. When the officer had learned the work of the department, he was moved.	By 5 pm he had written the story.
5. We walked a great deal in my boyhood.	5. It was getting dark. The wind was rising	When Shyama had known Gita for a year, she invited her to tea.	He had been writing the story.
6. Actors used to be considered Gods.	6. I was talking to Shiv the other day.		

**Complete the sentences, using the simple present or simple past forms of the verbs given in blanks**

1. I understood exactly what he meant (mean).
2. I don't believe everything he tells me. (not believe)
3. Listen I think there's someone at the door. (think)
4. Four plus four make eight. (make)
5. This sweeter does not match her suit (match)



6. Ramesh resembled his father when he was young. (resembles)
7. What exactly consists of.
8. This tea tastes nice. (taste)

**Answer the following questions, using the simple past tense forms of the verbs in italics, together with adverbs wherever they are suggested in the bracket.**

- Where did you spend your holiday last year?

I spent my holiday with my mother.

- Why did you choose this place for a holiday?

I love this place since my childhood.

- How did you travel?

I traveled by train.

- How did you spend your time?

I spent my time with my friend.

- What sort of luggage did you carry?

I carried woolen clothes.

- At what time did you get up?

I got up at 5 am.

- What sort of food did you eat?

I had rice and dal.

- How did you feel when you got back home?

I felt refreshed when I came back home.

### 5.9.2 Extended Composition

**Write a paragraph on Self Discipline in about 150-200 words**





Self-discipline is one of the most important and useful skills everyone should possess. This skill is essential in every area of life, and though most people acknowledge its importance, very few do something to strengthen it. Contrary to common belief, self-discipline does not mean being harsh toward you or living a limited, restrictive lifestyle. Self-discipline means self-control, which is a sign of inner strength and control of yourself, your actions, and your reactions. Self-discipline gives you the power to stick to your decisions and follow them through, without changing your mind, and is, therefore, one of the important requirements for achieving goals. The possession of this skill enables you to persevere with your decisions and plans until you accomplish them. It also manifests as inner strength, helping you to overcome addictions, procrastination, and laziness, and to follow through with whatever you do.

#### 5.10 REFERENCES/SUGGESTED READINGS

- Gandhi, Mohandas K. (2009). *An Autobiography: The Story of My Experiments With Truth*. p. 21. ISBN 978-1775414056.
- Malhotra, S.L (2001). *Lawyer to Mahatma: Life, Work, and Transformation of M. K. Gandhi*. p. 5. ISBN 978-81-7629-293-1.

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:06</b>	
<b>Great Books Born out of Great Minds</b>	
<b>Author-A. P. J. Abdul Kalan</b>	

**Lesson Structure****6.1 Learning Objectives****6.2 Introduction****6.3 Main Body of the Text****6.3.1 About the Author****6.3.2 About the Essay****6.4 Further Body of the text****6.5 Check your Progress****6.6 Summary****6.7 Keywords****6.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****6.8.1 Language Activity****6.8 Answers to Your Progress****6.9.1 Extended Composition****6.10 References/ Suggested Readings****6.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES**

After going through this lesson you will be able to-



- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

## **6.2 INTRODUCTION**

This essay is a part of a speech delivered by Dr. Kalam. He delivered this speech on 7<sup>th</sup> December 2013 at the Lucknow Carnival. In this speech, he gives useful advice to young persons on how to forge ahead in life. This address is highly motivating and inspirational for young authors and budding writers. Former Indian President Dr. A. P. J. Abdul Kalam spoke at three sessions at the 32nd Sharjah International Book Fair (SIBF) on Thursday, inspiring thousands of UAE schoolchildren, parents, educators, and readers.

## **6.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT**

### **6.3.1 About the Author**





Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam is a famous name in the whole world. He is counted among the greatest scientists of the 21st century. Even more, he becomes the 11th president of India and served his country. He was the most valued person in the country as his contribution as a scientist and as a president is beyond compare. Apart from that, his contribution to the ISRO (Indian Space Research Organization) is remarkable. He headed many projects that contributed to society also he was the one who helped in the development of Agni and Prithvi missiles. For his involvement in the Nuclear power in India, he was known as the “Missile Man of India”. And due to his contribution to the country, the government awarded him with the highest civilian award. The great missile man becomes the President of India in 2002. During his presidency period, the army and country achieved many milestones that contributed a lot to the nation. He served the nation with an open heart that’s why he was called ‘people’s president’. But at the end of his term period, he was not satisfied with his work that’s why he wanted to be the President a second time but later on forfeited his name. After leaving the presidential office at the end of his term Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam again turn to his old passion which is teaching students. He worked for many renowned and prestigious institutes of India located across the country. Above all, according to his the youth of the country is very talented but need the opportunity to prove their worth that’s why he supported them in their every good deed.

### **6.3.2 About the Essay**

Dr. Kalam began his talk titled “Great Books Born out of Great Minds” by applauding the audience for being self-proclaimed book lovers. The main thread of his speech was that human beings are wired for stories and the brain uses literature to make sense of life’s experiences. He firmly believes that storytelling is a central component of leadership and cited India’s own Mahatma Gandhi and South Africa’s Nelson Mandela for using the power of the written word to reach out to the people with their respective autobiographies.



Dr. Kalam begins his essay by talking about the culture of excellence. He believes that excellence is not by accident. It is a continuous struggle for people, organizations, and nations to make themselves better. They should set the performance goals themselves. Then they should work on these goals. If they meet with failures, they should not lose heart. Achieving high standards should be the aim of life. This is the culture of excellence.

Dr. Kalam talks about his interaction with young people. He says that he has met 16 million young people. They have aspirations in their lives. They want to become soldiers, doctors, and so on. They live in a world of imagination. When they grow up they take interest in novels, films, etc. The author feels that there is an author in the mind of every person.

According to Dr. Kalam, stories have a great influence on the mind of people. Stories help us grow through life's complex social problems. Imagination allows people to transport mentally into ideal worlds. Imaginations give us the magical ability to experience what we do not have but wish to possess. In this matter, a story has a great utility.

According to the author, storytelling has a darker side too. It makes us a victim of conspiracy theories, advertisements, and narratives about ourselves that are not wholly true. Ideas like right, wrong, sin, good, duty, responsibility, love, hate, all depend on who is reading the story and how he is interpreting it. We must consider the impact of storytelling in a serious manner. We should ensure that stories remain authentic human experiences.

Dr. Kalam praises Goethe, Shakespeare, and Valmiki. Goethe wrote the German epic 'Faust'. Shakespeare wrote great plays. He could see the past, the present, and the future through his magical plays. Valmiki evolved the story of Ramayana, which stands for the past, the present, and the future. The biographies of Goethe and Shakespeare claimed that their minds were inspired by the Life Force. Valmiki says that a divine force helped him evolve Ramayana.



Dr. Kalam gives a message to the young authors. He tells them that they also have a mighty force of inspiration in their hearts. They should find out this force. They should concentrate on it and then they should use it for their literary imagination. This will help them in creating great works.

#### 6.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT

##### Original Text

Friends, reading habits from a young age and continuous acquisition of knowledge through books indeed make human beings appreciate multiple aspects of social life and become autonomous learners. First, let me talk about the culture of excellence.

Friends, excellence is not by accident. It is a process, where individuals (or an organization or a nation) continuously strive to better themselves. They set the performance standard themselves, they work on their dreams with focus and are prepared to take calculated risks and do not get deterred by failures as they move towards their dreams. Then they step up their dreams as they tend to reach the original targets. They strive to work to their potential, and in the process, they increase their performance, thereby multiplying further their potential. This is an unending life cycle phenomenon. They are not in competition with anyone else, but themselves. That is the culture of excellence.

Friends, I have so far met 16 million young men. Interacting with the young is like living in a world of stories. For children, everything is a story. They want to become astronauts, soldiers, doctors, sailors, and so on. They live in landscapes of make-believe. They spin fantasies. After growing up they absorb novels, films, and plays. Even sporting events and criminal trials unfold as narratives. It suddenly strikes to me now, after living for 82 years, that I am also living a story. Am I not, every day, conveying events and thoughts in words? Are we not 'making' and 'beautifying' the Reality around us? Can we say that humans are 'wired' for stories? Is there an author alive in our minds creating narratives about the past and the future?



Perhaps, stories help us navigate life's complex social problems- just as flight simulators prepare pilots for difficult situations. Storytelling has evolved, like other behaviours, to ensure our survival. Imagination is an awesome evolutionary adaption that allows people to teleport mentally into alternative worlds. Imagination gives us, in other words, the near-magical ability to experience what we did not experience. A story is a thing that does' rather than a thing that is'. It is a tool with measurable utility rather than an object for aesthetic admiration. Attention is the reward that listeners bestow on the storyteller. This makes Storytelling a central component of leadership. When we wrote India 2020 in 1998, it was a story that stirred the Indian economy.

Of course, storytelling has a darker side too. It makes us a victim of conspiracy theories, advertisements, and narratives about ourselves that are more 'truthy' than true. Everything is in the eye of the beholder. Right, wrong, sin, good, duty, responsibility, love, hate, all of these depend on who is looking. New forms of stories generate their own new set of problems, which require yet more solutions. Alternate Reality Games (ARG) are interactive networked narratives that use the real world as a platform and uses trans-media Storytelling to deliver a story that may be altered by participants' ideas or actions.

The human brain has been on a slower evolutionary trajectory than technology and our brains still respond to content by looking for the story to make sense out of the experience. It is very important that we visit storytelling and ensure that stories remain authentic human experiences. Let the story leapfrog the technology and bring us to the core of human experience about collaboration and connection.

In this connection, let me share an observation. I was reading a book on the great author Johann Wolfgang Goethe, whose mind evolved Faust, the great German epic. Shakespeare could see the past, the present, and the future through his great musical plays. Whereas, the great Indian epic master Valmiki evolved the story of Ramayana, which stands for the past, the present, and the future. I was asking



myself what could have actuated their minds to evolve such great ideas. In the biographies of Goethe and Shakespeare, they claimed that their minds were actuated by the Life Force. They claim that every human being has intellectual energy, this Life Force. Valmiki says that a divine force helped him evolve Ramayana. *The message friends, particularly the young authors, is this: You have a mighty force within you- assemble it, concentrate, and use it for imagination and create great works.*

### 6.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**Answer the questions in 25-30 words**

#### Questions

1. What makes human beings autonomous learners?
2. How can one achieve excellence in life?
3. What are the career prospects for children according to Dr. Kalam?

#### Answers-

1. Acquisition of knowledge makes human beings autonomous learners. If we develop reading habits from a young age and acquire knowledge from books, we become learners. We should be able to appreciate the multiple aspects of social life.
2. Excellence is not an accident. It is a process. One can achieve excellence in life by striving to better oneself. A man should set the performance standard himself. Then he should strive to reach that standard.
3. According to the author, there are many career prospects for children. They can choose any field in which they are interested. They can become astronauts, soldiers, doctors, sailors, and so on.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

1. What is the culture of excellence, according to Dr. Kalam?
2. What message does Dr. Kalam give at the end of his speech?



**Answers-**

1. Dr. Kalam begins his essay by talking about the culture of excellence. He believes that excellence is not an accident. It is a process. This is an unending life-cycle phenomenon. It is a continuous struggle for individuals, organizations, and nations to make themselves better. They should set performance goals for themselves. Then they should work hard to achieve these goals. If they meet with failures, they should not lose heart. Achieving higher standards should be the aim of life. This is the culture of excellence.
2. Dr. Kalam gave the example of three great writers: Goethe, Shakespeare, and Valmiki. Their minds were inspired to write great epics. Goethe wrote the German epic 'Faust'. Shakespeare wrote great plays. Valmiki evolved the story of 'The Ramayana'. By giving their examples, Dr. Kalam gives a message to young authors. He tells them they have a mighty force of inspiration in their hearts. They should find out this force. They should concentrate on it and then they should use it for their literary imagination. This will help them in creating great works.

**Comprehensive passages****Passage 1**

Friends, reading habits from a young age and continuous acquisition of knowledge through books indeed make human beings appreciate multiple aspects of social life and become autonomous learners. First, let me talk about the culture of excellence.

Friends, excellence is not by accident. It is a process, where individuals (or an organization or a nation) continuously strive to better themselves. They set the performance standard themselves, they work on their dreams with focus and are prepared to take calculated risks, and do not get deterred by failures as they move towards their dreams. Then they step up their dreams as they tend to reach the original targets. They strive to work to their potential, and in the process, they increase their performance, thereby multiplying further their potential. This is an



unending life cycle phenomenon. They are not in competition with anyone else, but themselves. That is the culture of excellence.

**Questions-**

1. What makes human beings appreciate multiple aspects of societal life?
2. What is excellence, according to the author?
3. Who is not deterred by failures?
4. What is an unending life-cycle phenomenon?

**Answers-**

1. Reading habits make human beings appreciate multiple aspects of societal life.
2. Excellence is a process, where individuals continuously strive to better themselves.
3. Those who strive for excellence are not deterred by failures.
4. The struggle for achieving excellence is an unending life-cycle phenomenon.

**Passage 2**

Friends, I have so far met 16 million young men. Interacting with the young is like living in a world of stories. For children, everything is a story. They want to become astronauts, soldiers, doctors, sailors, and so on. They live in landscapes of make-believe. They spin fantasies. After growing up they absorb novels, films, and plays. Even sporting events and criminal trials unfold as narratives. It suddenly strikes to me now, after living for 82 years, that I am also living a story. Am I not, every day, conveying events and thoughts in words? Are we not 'making' and 'beautifying' the Reality around us? Can we say that humans are 'wired' for stories? Is there an author alive in our minds creating narratives about the past and the future?

**Questions-**

1. How many young men have the author met?
2. What does the author say about interacting with young men?
3. What are the career prospects for children according to the author?



4. What suddenly strikes the author, after living 82 years?

**Answers-**

1. The author has met 16 million young men.
2. He says that interacting with young men is like living in a world of stories.
3. They can become astronauts, soldiers, doctors, sailors, and so on.
4. It suddenly strikes the author that he is also living a story.

**Passage 3**

Of course, storytelling has a darker side too. It makes us a victim of conspiracy theories, advertisements, and narratives about ourselves that are more 'truthy' than true. Everything is in the eye of the beholder. Right, wrong, sin, good, duty, responsibility, love, hate, all of these depend on who is looking. New forms of stories generate their own new set of problems, which require yet more solutions. Alternate Reality Games (ARG) are interactive networked narratives that use the real world as a platform and uses trans-media Storytelling to deliver a story that may be altered by participants' ideas or actions.

**Questions-**

1. What is the dark side of storytelling?
2. What does the author say about the new form of stories?
3. On who do right, wrong, sin, good, etc. depend?
4. What does ARG mean?

**Answers-**

1. It makes us a victim of conspiracy theories, advertisements, and narratives about ourselves that are less true than they seem.
2. New forms of stories generate their own new sets of problems.
3. These things depend on who is looking.
4. It means Alternate Reality Games.

**6.6 SUMMARY**



Dr. Kalam begins his essay by talking about the culture of excellence. He believes that excellence is not by accident. It is a continuous struggle for people, organizations, and nations to make themselves better. They should set the performance goals themselves. Then they should work on these goals. If they meet with failures, they should not lose heart. Achieving high standards should be the aim of life. This is the culture of excellence.

Dr. Kalam talks about his interaction with young people. He says that he has met 16 million young people. They have aspirations in their lives. They want to become soldiers, doctors, and so on. They live in a world of imagination. When they grow up they take interest in novels, films, etc. The author feels that there is an author in the mind of every person.

According to Dr. Kalam, stories have a great influence on the mind of people. Stories help us grow through life's complex social problems. Imagination allows people to transport mentally into ideal worlds. Imaginations give us the magical ability to experience what we do not have but wish to possess. In this matter, a story has a great utility.

According to the author, storytelling has a darker side too. It makes us a victim of conspiracy theories, advertisements, and narratives about ourselves that are not wholly true. Ideas like right, wrong, sin, good, duty, responsibility, love, hate, all depend on who is reading the story and how he is interpreting it. We must consider the impact of storytelling in a serious manner. We should ensure that stories remain authentic human experiences.

Dr. Kalam praises Goethe, Shakespeare, and Valmiki. Goethe wrote the German epic 'Faust'. Shakespeare wrote great plays. He could see the past, the present, and the future through his magical plays. Valmiki evolved the story of Ramayana, which stands for the past, the present, and the future. The biographies of Goethe and Shakespeare claimed that their minds were inspired by the Life Force. Valmiki says that a divine force helped him evolve Ramayana.



Dr. Kalam gives a message to the young authors. He tells them that they also have a mighty force of inspiration in their hearts. They should find out this force. They should concentrate on it and then they should use it for their literary imagination. This will help them in creating great works.

### 6.7 KEYWORDS

#### Word-meaning

Appreciate- value

Strive- to make every effort

Autonomous- independent

Ensure- to make sure

Aesthetic- artistic

Alter- change

### 6.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS (SAQ'S)

Find words from the essay that is synonymous with the italicized words in the following sentences.

Word	Synonym
Continuous	Regular
Right	Proper
Awesome	Fearsome
Admiration	Praise
Suddenly	At once

Find words from the essay that are antonyms with the italicized words in the following sentences.

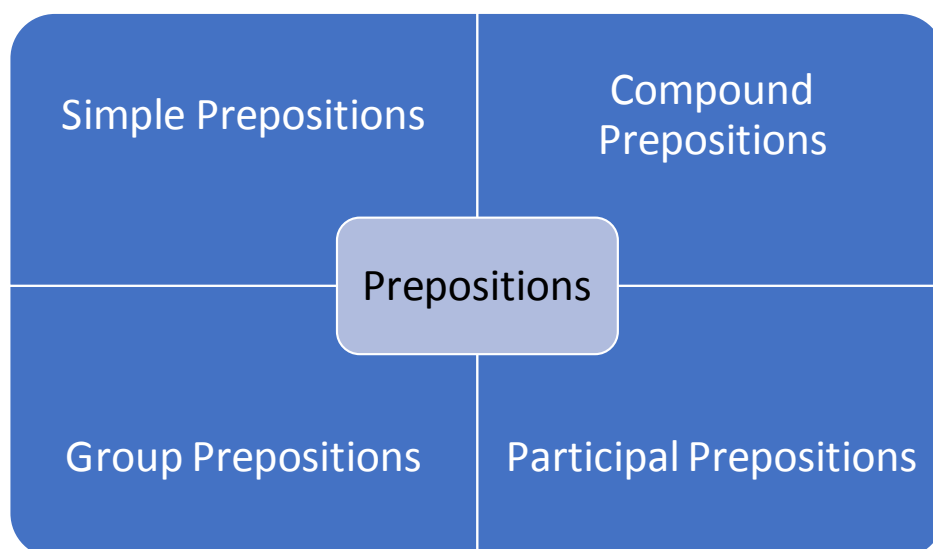


Word	Antonym
Difficult	Easy
Love	Hatred
Sin	Piousness
Real	Unreal
Work	Laziness

## 6.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS

### 6.9.1 Language activity

A preposition is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun to demonstrate to show in what relation the person or thing denoted by its stands regarding something else. Example: at, in, of, on, etc.



### Exercise

Fill in the blank with the correct preposition



- When will you go to University?
- The child threw the toy on the floor.
- The boys live in the hostel.
- Parul is jealous of me.
- Drinking is injurious to health.

### 6.9.2 Extended Composition

**You are to play an interschool cricket match. Describe how will you select the team and prepare for the match.**

Cricket is celebrated and practiced as a sport in many countries. It is played within a 22-yard oval field with two teams competing against each other. Each team includes 11 players who can be batters, all-rounder as well as bowlers. The game starts with a toss and is played based on over where each over has 6 balls to be bowled. Runs can be scored by hitting the ball out of the boundary in the form of fours and sixes or by running between the wickets to take singles. The total number of over depends on the format of the game. India plays cricket both as a sport and a recreation. Youngsters can be seen with their bats and balls in every nook and corner of the country. The Indian Cricket teams of both men and women represent the nation in different tournaments. The dedication and popularity of this game make it larger than life everywhere!

### 6.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

- Pruthi, R. K. (2005). "Ch. 4. Missile Man of India". President A.P.J. Abdul Kalam. Anmol Publications. pp. 61–76. ISBN 978-81-261-1344-6.
- "India's 'Mr. Missile': A man of the people". 30 July 2015. Archived from the original on 25 September 2015. Retrieved 30 July 2015.
- "Kalam's unrealized 'Nag' missile dream to become reality next year". 30 July 2015. Archived from the original on 3 January 2017. Retrieved 30 July 2015.



- Sen, Amartya (2003). "India and the Bomb". In M. V. Ramana; C. Rammanohar Reddy (eds.). *Prisoners of the Nuclear Dream*. Sangam Books. pp. 167–188. ISBN 978-81-250-2477-4.

\*\*\*\*\*





<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:07</b>	
<b>The Responsibility of Young Men</b> <b>Author-Lal Bahadur Shastri</b> <b>Bharat Mata</b> <b>Author Jawaharlal Nehru</b>	

**Lesson Structure****7.1 Learning Objectives****7.2 Introduction****7.3 Main Body of the Text****7.3.1 About the Author****7.3.2 About the Essay****7.4 Further Body of the text****7.5 Check your Progress****7.6 Summary****7.7 Keywords****7.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****7.8.1 Language Activity****7.9 Answers to Your Progress****7.9.1 Extended Composition****7.10 References/ Suggested Readings**



## 7.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

## 7.2 INTRODUCTION

The essay 'Responsibility of Young Men' is an abridged version of the speech that Shastriji delivered at the convocation of the Aligarh Muslim University. In this speech, he emphasizes the role that the Indian youth has to play in the development and progress of the nation. Shastriji says that our citizenship gives certain rights. They are guaranteed by the constitution. But this gives us certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood. Our democracy gives freedom to us. But this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. A good citizen is one who obeys the law. He must take delight in performing his civic duties. He must have a sense of self-restraint and discipline.

## 7.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

This essay is the abridged version of the speech that Shastriji delivered at the convocation of the Aligarh Muslim University. In this speech, he emphasizes the role that the Indian youth has to play in the development and progress of the nation.

### 7.3.1 About the Author

**Lal Bahadur Shastri**

Lal Bahadur Shastri (2 October 1904 – 11 January 1966) was an Indian politician who served as the second Prime Minister of India. He promoted the White Revolution – a national campaign to increase the production and supply of milk – by supporting the Amul milk co-operative of Anand, Gujarat, and creating the National Dairy Development Board. Underlining the need to boost India's food production, Shastri also promoted the Green Revolution in India in 1965. This led to an increase in food grain production, especially in Punjab, Haryana, and Uttar Pradesh.

### 7.3.2 About the Essay

Shastriji says that our citizenship gives certain rights. They are guaranteed by the constitution. But this gives us certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood. Our democracy gives freedom to us. But this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. A good citizen is one who obeys the law. He must take delight in performing his civic duties. He must have a sense of self-restraint and discipline.

In the past, there used to be a personal touch between the teacher and the student. But at present, in our country, the number of students and the educational institutions have grown very large. So there cannot be any personal touch contact



between the teacher and the taught. The economic stresses of present-day life, unfortunately, do not leave enough time for the parents to look after the children. Often this creates problems for young persons. They are often left much to their resources.

According to the writer, work culture is very important. In his view, every station in life is important in itself. Work has its dignity. There is great satisfaction in doing one's job to the best of one's ability. Whatever the duties, we should apply ourselves with sincerity and devotion. This approach is good in itself. But it has been added advantage of opening avenues for further advancement. We have to see whether we have done our job well before thinking of criticizing anybody else.

Shastriji says that we should never forget that loyalty to the country is more important than all other loyalties. And this is absolute loyalty. We should never think about what we get in return for this loyalty. It is essential to remember that the entire country is one and that anyone who fosters or promotes separatism is not our true friend. Separatism is very dangerous for the country. The country cannot progress if there are separatist tendencies among the citizens.

According to the author, loyalty to the country comes ahead of all other loyalties. A democratic country is sustained not only by the greatness of a few. It is sustained by the co-operative effort of the many. The future of the country is in the hands of young people. When the older generations complete their task the new generations come to take their place. If they are well loyal to the country as individuals and as citizens, the country's future will be bright indeed.

Secularism means that there is equal respect for all religions. There are equal opportunities for all citizens whether they follow any caste, creed, or faith. Our position about secularism is known very well. It is embodied in our Constitution. According to the writer, the seed of secularism has to be sown at the earliest stages. It should be sown in the field of education. Only then the plant of secularism can be carefully nurtured as it grows.



#### 7.4 Further Body of the Text

##### Original Text

Whatever your station in the future life, each one of you should first of all think of yourselves as citizens of the country. This confers on you certain rights, which are guaranteed by the Constitution, but it also subjects you to certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood. Ours is a democracy, which enjoins freedom to the individual, but this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. And these voluntary restraints have to be exercised and demonstrated in every-day life.

A good citizen is one who obeys the law, whether there is a policeman around or not, and who takes delight in performing his civic duties. In the olden days' sense of self-restraint and discipline was inculcated by the combined effort of the family and the teacher. The economic stresses of present-day life, unfortunately, do not leave enough time for the parents to look after the children.

In educational institutions, the numbers have grown so large as to take away the benefits, which used to accrue formerly by personal contact between the teacher and the taught. Inevitably, our young students are often left much to their resources. Often this creates problems, which we all know about. This is an important aspect, which needs thorough examination. The responsibility of our young citizens is great. In my view, every station in life is important in itself. Work has its dignity and there is great satisfaction in doing one's job to the best of one's ability.

Whatever the duties, we should apply ourselves with sincerity and devotion. Such an approach, apart from being good in itself, also has the added advantage of opening avenues for further advancement. We have to see whether we have done our job well before thinking of criticizing anybody else. All too often, we succumb to the temptation of decrying others without bothering to look to ourselves.



Never forget that loyalty to the country comes ahead of all other loyalties. And this is an absolute loyalty since one cannot weigh it in terms of what one receives. It is essential to remember that the entire country is one and that anyone who fosters or promotes separatism or fissiparous tendencies are not our true friends. What I have said stems from a desire to see that the youth of our country prepares itself in a disciplined and determined manner for the responsibilities of tomorrow. A democratic country is sustained not by the greatness of a few but by the co-operative effort of the many. The future of the country is in your hands and as the older generations complete their task the new ones come along to take their place. If they are well equipped as individuals and as citizens, the country's future will be bright indeed. At a time when you are at the threshold of a new period in your life, I would urge you to play your role with confidence and dignity.

Our position about secularism is known so well that it hardly needs any reiteration. It is embodied in our Constitution, which ensures equal respect for all religions and equal opportunities for all citizens, irrespective of their caste and creed and the faith which they profess. Despite a seeming diversity, there is a fundamental unity in India, which we all cherish and it has to be our constant endeavor to maintain and strengthen this unity.

The country can progress only if it does away completely with fissiparous tendencies and emerges as an integrated whole. And it is in the field of education that the seed of secularism has to be sown at the earliest stages so that the plant can be carefully nurtured as it grows.

### 7.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

**Answer the questions in 25-30 words**

1. What does the Constitution of India guarantee every citizen?
2. According to the writer, who is a good citizen?

**Answers-**



1. The Constitution of India guarantees certain rights to every citizen. But this gives us certain responsibilities also, which also have to be clearly understood.
2. According to the writer, a good citizen is one who obeys the law. He must take delight in performing his civic duties. He must have a sense of self-restraint and discipline.

**Answer the questions in 75-100 words**

**Questions-**

1. Why are voluntary restraints important for an organized society?
2. Explain the term 'secularism'. Why is it necessary?

**Answers-**

1. Shastriji says that our citizenship gives certain rights. They are guaranteed by the constitution. But this gives us certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood. Our democracy gives freedom to us. But this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. A good citizen is one who obeys the law. He must take delight in performing his civic duties. He must have a sense of self-restraint and discipline. Thus the voluntary restraints are better than those restraints which are put on us by the society or government.
2. In this essay, Shastriji tells us about the necessity of secularism in our life. Secularism is the need of time. Secularism means that there is equal respect for all religions. There are equal opportunities for all citizens whether they follow any caste, creed, or faith. Our position about secularism is known very well. It is embodied in our Constitution. According to the writer, the seed of secularism has to be sown at the earliest stages. It should be sown in the field of education. Only then the plant of secularism can be carefully nurtured as it grows.

**Comprehensive passages****Passage 1**

Whatever your station in the future life, each one of you should first of all think of yourselves as citizens of the country. This confers on you certain rights, which are guaranteed by the Constitution, but it also subjects you to certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood.

Ours is a democracy, which enjoins freedom to the individual, but this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. And these voluntary restraints have to be exercised and demonstrated in every-day life.

**Questions-**

1. What should we first think of?
2. What is guaranteed by our Constitution?
3. What does our democracy give us?
4. **What** is this freedom subjected to?

**Answers-**

1. We should first all think of ourselves as citizens of this country.
2. Our rights are guaranteed by our Constitution.
3. Our democracy gives us freedom.
4. This freedom was subjected to several voluntary restraints.

**Passage 2**

Never forget that loyalty to the country comes ahead of all other loyalties. And this is an absolute loyalty since one cannot weigh it in terms of what one receives. It is essential to remember that the entire country is one and that anyone who fosters or promotes separatism or fissiparous tendencies are not our true friends. What I have said stems from a desire to see that the youth of our country prepares itself in a disciplined and determined manner for the responsibilities of tomorrow. A





democratic country is sustained not by the greatness of a few but by the co-operative effort of the many. The future of the country is in your hands and as the older generations complete their task the new ones come along to take their place. If they are well equipped as individuals and as citizens, the country's future will be bright indeed. At a time when you are at the threshold of a new period in your life, I would urge you to play your role with confidence and dignity.

**Questions-**

1. What does the writer say about loyalty?
2. What is absolute loyalty?
3. Who is not our true friend?
4. Where is the future of the country?

**Answers-**

1. He says that loyalty to the country comes ahead of all other loyalties.
2. Loyalty to the country is absolute loyalty.
3. Anyone who promotes separatism is not our true friend.
4. The future of the country is in the hands of young people.

**7.6 SUMMARY**

Shastriji says that our citizenship gives certain rights. They are guaranteed by the constitution. But this gives us certain responsibilities, which also have to be clearly understood. Our democracy gives freedom to us. But this freedom has to be subjected to several voluntary restraints in the interests of organized society. A good citizen is one who obeys the law. He must take delight in performing his civic duties. He must have a sense of self-restraint and discipline.

**7.7 KEYWORDS**

- Enjoin- to direct
- Restraint- control
- Accrue- to increase over some time



- Dignity- pride
- Advancement- development
- Criticize- condemn

### 7.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS (SAQ'S)

Find words from the essay that is synonymous with the italicized words in the following sentences.

Word	Synonym
Rights	Just claims
Faith	Belief
Ability	Capability
Delight	Joy
Satisfaction	Contentment

Find words from the essay that are antonyms with the italicized words in the following sentences.

Word	Antonym
Problem	Solution
Obey	Disobey
Combined	Separated
Best	Worst
Former	Latter

### 7.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS

#### 7.9.1 Language Activity

**Conjunction-**



Conjunctions are words that join together words or sentences. Example: and, but, etc.

### Exercise

**Fill in the correct conjunctions in the following sentences**

- Gravit and Torres play football.
- Sachit is rich but honest.
- Jayant plays cricket well, yet his favorite sport is football.
- Snakes crawl and elephants walk.
- I came back after he had gone home.
- Akshit will play if Amit plays.

### Tense

#### Future Continuous Tense

This tense is used to express an action that is going on at a given point in time in the future.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I shall be singing.	I will not be singing	Will I be singing?
We shall be singing.	We shall not be singing.	Shall we be singing?
They shall be singing.	They will not be singing	Shall they be singing?

#### 7.9.2 Extended Composition

**Write a paragraph on how you will spend your summer vacations**

Summer Vacation is quite a refreshing time for me. This summer get-away will be unique for me, as my parents have arranged an outing to Manali. It will be seven days trip. I am truly eager to watch the scenic beauty of the mountains. We have booked our tickets to Manali. The arrangement is separated into three little journeys of Chandigarh and Delhi. We will go through one day in Chandigarh and Delhi, there



we will go for touring, and after the side tour of Chandigarh, we will take a vehicle for Manali. For the following six days, we will be in Manali, and we have wanted to visit Rohtang Pass, Manikaran, Hidimba Devi Temple, and Manali markets. A year ago, we went to visit Mumbai and Lonavala. So for a change, my dad arranged an outing to the mountains. I have planned to capture lots of pictures. I love photography; catching the snowcapped mountains is my ultimate wish. For the remaining summer vacation, I will join the skateboarding classes. My mom has recruited a Maths teacher for me, as I have a little fear of arithmetic. I will spend a lazy afternoon in the summer with my comics. Before my next academic session, I need to gather all the great memories with my loved ones.

#### 7.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

*Bakshi, Shiri Ram (1991), Struggle for Independence: Lal Bahadur Shastri, Anmol Publications, ISBN 9788170411420*

- *Dhawan, S. K. (1991), Bharat Ratnas, 1954-1991, Wave Publications*
- *Grover, Verinder (1993), Political Thinkers of Modern India: Lala Lajpat Rai, Deep & Deep Publications, ISBN 978-81-7100-426-3*
- *Guha, Ramachandra (2008), India After Gandhi: The History of the World's Largest Democracy, Pan Macmillan, ISBN 978-0-330-39611-0*
- *Gupta, U.N. (2003), Indian Parliamentary Democracy, Atlantic Publishers & Distributors, ISBN 978-8126901937*
- *Prasad, Rajeshwar (1991), Days with Lal Bahadur Shastri: Glimpses from The Last Seven Years, Allied Publishers, ISBN 978-81-7023-331-2*
- *Srivastava, C.P. (1995), Lal Bahadur Shastri, Prime Minister of India; a life of truth in politics (1st ed.), Delhi: Oxford University Press, ISBN 978-0-19-563499-0*
- *Verma, Krant M. L. (1978), Lalita Ke Ansoo on WorldCat, OCLC 60419441*

\*\*\*\*\*



<b>Course Code: BA101</b>	<b>Author: Dr.NutanYadav</b>
<b>Lesson No:07</b>	
<b>Bharat Mata</b> <b>Author-Jawaharlal Nehru</b>	

**Lesson Structure****7.1 Learning Objectives****7.2 Introduction****7.3 Main Body of the Text****7.3.1 About the Author****7.3.2 About the Essay****7.4 Further Body of the text****7.5 Check your Progress****7.6 Summary****7.7 Keywords****7.8 Self -Assessment Questions (SAQs)****7.8.1 Language Activity****7.9 Answers to Your Progress****7.9.1 Extended Composition****7.10 References/ Suggested Readings**



## 7.1 LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After going through this lesson you will be able to-

- To develop reading, writing, speaking, and listening skills of the English language.
- To enrich the taste of literature.
- To develop a reading habit
- Know the difference between poetry and prose.
- Trained in critically analyzing phonetic transcription of sound system

## 7.2 INTRODUCTION

Nehru wrote his book 'The Discovery of India' in 1944, while he was in Ahmadnagar Fort Prison. This essay is taken from Chapter 3 of this book. In the book, the chapter is titled 'The Quest'. It was written simply. Here Nehru presents a vivid portrait of the innocence of Indian peasants. He enriches the reader's general awareness by introducing them to landmarks events from around the world

## 7.3 MAIN BODY OF THE TEXT

In this essay, Nehru describes his meeting with the peasants and other people in his public meetings during the freedom struggle of India. He says that the name 'Bharat' is derived from the mythical founder of India. Nehru preferred to speak to the villagers about 'Bharat Mata'. In the cities, people do not want to hear about such simple things. But he spoke to the peasants with their limited outlook. He spoke of his great country for whose freedom they were struggling.

### 7.3.1 About the Author



**Jawaharlal Nehru**

Jawaharlal Nehru, also known as Pandit Nehru, was a political leader of India and a freedom fighter. His contribution to the Indian History of independence is immense. He was also very fond of children and was commonly referred to as Chacha Nehru by them. Nehru was also a close associate of Mahatma Gandhi and thrived with Gandhi as his mentor. Nehru had also planned many movements demanding dominion status and total independence for India from the British. Jawaharlal Nehru organized the first Kisan March (the march organized for the Farmers) in Pratapgarh, then in Uttar Pradesh, then known as the United Provinces.

He was imprisoned twice from 1920 to 1922 for his active role in the Non-cooperation Movement. He was the baton-charged at Lucknow and also played an essential role in opposing the Simon commission. In the year, 1928, Jawaharlal Nehru formed the “Independence of India League” and was appointed as its General Secretary.

Nehru became the President of the Lahore session of the Indian National Congress in 1929 and passed the resolution of Purna Swaraj. Again from the period of 1930 to 1935, Jawaharlal was imprisoned numerous times for his role in Salt Satyagraha, or the Dandi March, and other similar movements. With the untiring efforts into the



Indian freedom struggle, India finally attained independence on 15th August 1947, and he became the first Prime Minister of independent and free India.

### 2.3.2 About the Essay.

Nehru wrote his book 'The Discovery of India' in 1944, while he was in Ahmadnagar Fort Prison. This essay is taken from Chapter 3 of this book. In the book, the chapter is titled 'The Quest'. It was written simply. Here Nehru presents a vivid portrait of the innocence of Indian peasants. He enriches the reader's general awareness by introducing them to landmark events from around the world.

In this essay, Nehru describes his meeting with the peasants and other people in his public meetings during the freedom struggle of India. He says that the name 'Bharat' is derived from the mythical founder of India. Nehru preferred to speak to the villagers about 'Bharat Mata'. In the cities, people do not want to hear about such simple things. But he spoke to the peasants with their limited outlook. He spoke of his great country for whose freedom they were struggling.

Nehru spoke to the peasants about many things. He told them how each part of India differed from the other. Yet there is unity in India. There are common problems of India from north to south and from east to west. He told them about the 'Swaraj' which could not be for one person only but for all the Indians. He told them about journeying from one corner of India to the other. He told them wonderful things in other countries.

Nehru said that the peasants all over India were facing similar problems. Every peasant asked him identical questions. It was because their troubles were the same. They were suffering from poverty, debt, vested interests, landlords, and moneylenders. They were also suffering from heavy rents and taxes and police harassment. All these sufferings of the farmers were because of the structure that the foreign government had imposed upon the people.





Sometimes, when Nehru reached a gathering, a great roar of welcome would greet him, people would shout, "Bharat Mata ki Jai" (Victory to Mother India). Nehru asked them what the meaning of 'Bharat Mata' was. But they could not answer that question adequately. Then he explained to them the meaning of 'Bharat Mata'. India indeed meant great fields, mountains, rivers, forests, etc. but ultimately Bharat meant the dharti or land as well as the people of India.

According to the writer, the people of India are the 'Bharat Mata'. These are the people who lived in the villages and cities and the people like Nehru and the peasants. They were spread over this vast land which is called 'Bharat Mata' or 'Mother India'. There are millions of people. India is essentially these people. And when they say 'Victory to Mother India', it means victory to them, the people of India.

Nehru told people at his gatherings that only lands, forests, mountains, and rivers do not make a country. a country is made by its people. When people asked him the meaning of 'Bharat Mata', he told them that they were the Bharat Mata. He told them that "You are parts of this Bharat Mata." At first, the people could not understand him, but then slowly they grasped the meaning of Nehru's words. Then their eyes would light up as if they had made a great discovery.

#### 7.4 FURTHER BODY OF THE TEXT

##### Original Text

Often, as I wandered from meeting to meeting, I spoke to my audience of this India of ours, of Hindustan, and of Bharata, the old Sanskrit name derived from the mythical founder of the race. I seldom did so in the cities, for there the audiences were more sophisticated and wanted stronger fare. But to the peasant, with his limited outlook, I spoke of this great country for whose freedom we were struggling, of how each part differed from the other and yet was India, of common problems of the peasants from north to south and east to west, of the Swaraj that could only be for all and every part and not for some.



I told them of my journeying from the Khyber Pass in the far north-west to Kanyakumari or Cape Comorin in the distant south, and how everywhere the peasants put me identical questions, for their troubles were the same—poverty, debt, vested interests, landlords, moneylenders, heavy rents and taxes, police harassment, and all these wrapped up in the structure that the foreign government had imposed upon us—and relief must also come for all. I tried to make them think of India as a whole, and even to some little extent of this wide world of which we were a part. I brought in the struggle in China, in Spain, in Abyssinia, in Central Europe, in Egypt and the countries of Western Asia. I told them of the wonderful changes in the Soviet Union and of the great progress made in America.

The task was not easy; yet it was not so difficult as I had imagined, for our ancient epics and myths and legends, which they knew so well, had made them familiar with the conception of their country, and some there were always who had traveled far and wide to the great places of pilgrimage situated at the four corners of India. Or some old soldiers had served in foreign parts in World War I or other expeditions. Even my references to foreign countries were brought home to them by the consequences of the great depression of the '30s.

Sometimes as I reached a gathering, a great roar of welcome would greet me: **Bharat Mata ki Jai**—Victory to Mother India. I would ask them unexpectedly what they meant by that cry, who was this **Bharat Mata**, Mother India, whose victory they wanted? My question would amuse them and surprise them, and then, not knowing exactly what to answer, they would look at each other and me. I persisted in my questioning. At last, a vigorous Jat wedded to the soil from immemorial generations, would say that it was the dharti, the good earth of India, that they meant. What earth? Their particular village patch, or all the patches in the district or province, or the whole of India?

And so question and answer went on, till they would ask me impatiently to tell them all about it. I would endeavor to do so and explain that India was all this that they



had thought, but it was much more. The mountains and the rivers of India, and the forests and the broad fields, which gave us food, were all dear to us, but what counted ultimately were the people of India, people like them and me, who were spread out all over this vast land. Bharat Mata, Mother India, was essentially these millions of people, and victory to her meant victory to these people. You are parts of this Bharat Mata, I told them, you are in a manner yourselves Bharat Mata, and as this idea slowly soaked into their brains, their eyes would light up as if they had made a great discovery.

### 7.5 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

#### Answer the questions in 25-30 words

1. According to Nehru, from where did India get its name, Bharat?
2. Where is Khyber Pass located?
3. Where is Cape Comorin located?

#### Answers-

1. In this essay, Nehru talks of India and its culture. He tells us that India got its name 'Bharat' from the Sanskrit name derived from the mythical founder of our country. His name was Bharat.
2. Before the partition, Khyber Pass was a part of India. After the partition, it went to Pakistan. Now it is on the border of Pakistan and Afghanistan.
3. Cape Comorin is known as 'Kanyakumari' these days. It is the southern end of our country. It is situated on the southern extremity of India. It is in the state of Tamil Nadu.

#### Answer the questions in 75-100 words

1. Enumerate the various things that Nehru spoke to peasants about.
2. What were the problems faced by the peasants all over India?

**Answers-**

1. Nehru spoke to the peasants about many things. . He told them how each part of India differed from the other. Yet there is unity in India. There are common problems of India from north to south and from east to west. He told them about the 'Swaraj' which could not be for one person only but all the Indians. He told them about journeying from one corner of India to the other. He told them wonderful things about other countries. He asked the people of India to serve their motherland and to free it from the foreign rule.
2. Nehru said that the peasants all over India were facing similar problems. Every peasant asked him identical questions. It was because their troubles were the same. They were suffering from poverty, debt, vested interests, landlords, and moneylenders. They were also suffering from heavy rents and taxes and police harassment. All these sufferings of the farmers were because of the structure that the foreign government had imposed upon the people. He told them that they must struggle to get rid of these problems. Nehru tried to make them think of India as a whole.

**Comprehensive passages****Passage 1**

Often, as I wandered from meeting to meeting, I spoke to my audience of this India of ours, of Hindustan, and of Bharata, the old Sanskrit name derived from the mythical founder of the race. I seldom did so in the cities, for there the audiences were more sophisticated and wanted stronger fare. But to the peasant, with his limited outlook, I spoke of this great country for whose freedom we were struggling, of how each part differed from the other and yet was India, of common problems of the peasants from north to south and east to west, of the Swaraj that could only be for all and every part and not for some.

**Questions-**



1. About what thing did the author speak to the audience?
2. From where has the word 'Bharat' been derived?
3. What does the author say about the city audience?
4. What does the author say about the peasants?

**Answers-**

1. He spoke to them about 'Bharat Mata'
2. It has been derived from the mythical founder of his country.
3. He says that the city audience was more sophisticated.
4. He says that the peasants have a limited outlook.

**Passage 2**

Sometimes as I reached a gathering, a great roar of welcome would greet me: **Bharat Mata ki Jai**—Victory to Mother India. I would ask them unexpectedly what they meant by that cry, who was this **Bharat Mata**, Mother India, whose victory they wanted? My question would amuse them and surprise them, and then, not knowing exactly what to answer, they would look at each other and me. I persisted in my questioning. At last, a vigorous Jat wedded to the soil from immemorial generations, would say that it was the dharti, the good earth of India, that they meant. What earth? Their particular village patch, or all the patches in the district or province, or the whole of India?

**Questions-**

1. How did the audience greet the author?
2. What did the author ask them?
3. What did a Jat say?
4. Who is the writer of this passage?

**Answers-**

1. The audience greeted the author with the shout 'Bharat Mata ki jai'
2. He asked them who Bharat Mata was.



3. He said that this dharti (land) was Bharat Mata.
4. The writer of the passage is Jawaharlal Nehru.

### Passage 3

And so question and answer went on, till they would ask me impatiently to tell them all about it. I would endeavor to do so and explain that India was all this that they had thought, but it was much more. The mountains and the rivers of India, and the forests and the broad fields, which gave us food, were all dear to us, but what counted ultimately were the people of India, people like them and me, who were spread out all over this vast land. Bharat Mata, Mother India, was essentially these millions of people, and victory to her meant victory to these people. You are parts of this Bharat Mata, I told them, you are in a manner yourselves Bharat Mata, and as this idea slowly soaked into their brains, their eyes would light up as if they had made a great discovery.

### Questions-

1. What did the author endeavor to do?
2. What essentially was Bharat Mata?
3. Who are the parts of Bharat Mata?
4. What would happen when the villagers understood the idea?

### Answers-

1. He endeavored to explain what India was.
2. Bharat Mata was essentially the millions of people.
3. The people of India are parts of Bharat Mata.
4. Their eyes would light up as if they had made a great discovery.

### 7.6 SUMMARY

Nehru describes his meeting with the peasants and other people in his public meetings during the freedom struggle of India. He says that the name 'Bharat' is derived from the mythical founder of India. Nehru preferred to speak to the villagers



about 'Bharat Mata'. In the cities, people do not want to hear about such simple things. But he spoke to the peasants with their limited outlook. He spoke of his great country for whose freedom they were struggling.

Nehru spoke to the peasants about many things. He told them how each part of India differed from the other. Yet there is unity in India. There are common problems of India from north to south and from east to west. He told them about the 'Swaraj' which could not be for one person only but all the Indians. He told them about journeying from one corner of India to the other. He told them wonderful things about other countries.

Nehru said that the peasants all over India were facing similar problems. Every peasant asked him identical questions. It was because their troubles were the same. They were suffering from poverty, debt, vested interests, landlords, and moneylenders. They were also suffering from heavy rents and taxes and police harassment. All these sufferings of the farmers were because of the structure that the foreign government had imposed upon the people.

Sometimes, when Nehru reached a gathering, a great roar of welcome would greet him, people would shout, "Bharat Mata ki Jai" (Victory to Mother India). Nehru asked them what the meaning of 'Bharat Mata' was. But they could not answer that question adequately. Then he explained to them the meaning of 'Bharat Mata'. India indeed meant great fields, mountains, rivers, forests, etc. but ultimately Bharat meant the dharti or land as well as the people of India.

According to the writer, the people of India are the 'Bharat Mata'. These are the people who lived in the villages and cities and the people like Nehru and the peasants. They were spread over this vast land which is called 'Bharat Mata' or 'Mother India'. There are millions of people. India is essentially these people. And when they say 'Victory to Mother India', it means victory to them, the people of India.

Nehru told people at his gatherings that only lands, forests, mountains, and rivers do not make a country. a country is made by its people. When people asked him the



meaning of 'Bharat Mata', he told them that they were the Bharat Mata. He told them that "You are parts of this Bharat Mata." At first, the people could not understand him, but then slowly they grasped the meaning of Nehru's words. Then their eyes would light up as if they had made a great discovery-

### 7.7 KEYWORDS

- Seldom- rarely
- Imposed- forced
- Amuse- interest
- Conception- idea
- Myth- a traditional story accepted as history.
- Sophisticated- refined

### 7.8 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS (SAQ'S)

**Convert the following nouns into adjectives**

Noun	Adjective
Abdomen	Abdominal
Intellect	Intellectual
Nonsense	Nonsensical
Shade	Shady
Additional	Additional

**Make words using the following prefixes**

Prefix	Word
Eco-	Ecology
Ant-	Antique
Styl-	Stylistics





De-	Deflate
Chrono-	Chronology

## 7.9 ANSWERS TO YOUR PROGRESS

### 7.9.1 Language activity

#### Future Perfect Tense

This tense form is used to talk about a future action that can be completed at a particular time. This tense also consolidates the determination of the speaker.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I shall have played.	Will I have played?	I shall not have played.
We shall have played.	Shall we have played?	We shall not have played.
They will have played	Shall they have played?	They will not have played.

#### Future Perfect Continuous Tense

This tense form is used to express actions that began in the past and will be in progress over some time that will end in the future.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I shall have been playing	I shall not have been playing	Will I have been playing?
We shall have been playing	We shall not have been playing	Shall we have been playing?
They will have been playing	They will not have been playing	Shall they have been playing?



### 7.9.2 Extended Composition

#### Write a paragraph on 'The Need to Ban Plastic.'

Five hundred billion used globally and one hundred billion of them end up in U.S. landfills, taking about one thousand years to decompose, but only 5.2 percent were recycled (Borrud, 2007, p.75).-These are the figures plastic bags have produced every year. Human beings invented plastic bags for the convenience of carriers and packers. However, just as other great inventions, say, nuclear energy and biotechnology, plastic bags are causing serious issues like global warming, environmental pollution, and energy consumption. They are gradually becoming a sword towards us. In responding to this problem, the city of San Francisco has become the trailblazer to prohibit non-biodegradable plastic bags in its supermarkets and pharmacies.

In other words, in this era of high oil prices and energy scarcity, petroleum-based bags are costing considerable natural resources and ultimately turn them into a huge pile of useless garbage. Significant energies like fuel, from which ethylene gas is obtained and plastic bags are made, are nonrenewable, while human beings are still consuming these precious treasures recklessly. What's more, the plastic bags easily catch the wind and blow, causing the difficulty of confining them to where disposed of (Borrud, 2007, p.75). This leads to difficulty in recycling, which hinders the circulation and reuse of the material to a large extent. Moreover, Ross Mirkarimi, the author of the ban, also notes that only 1% of the plastic bags in San Francisco are recycled, despite the city's perfect local recycling system ("100 Billion Reasons," 2007, p.77). People's poor awareness of energy-saving has brought the oil-shortage crisis one step further. A prohibitory edict on petroleum-based bags might be the right way out before we ultimately realize that the last calorie on the earth comes from our body temperature.



Another reason for supporting the prohibition on petroleum-based bags is that they are economically inefficient. Angela Spivey reports the city of New York once suspended their services in plastic recycling.

#### 7.10 REFERENCES/ SUGGESTED READINGS

- *Nehru: The Invention of India* by Shashi Tharoor (November 2003) Arcade Books ISBN 1-55970-697-X
- *Jawaharlal Nehru* (Edited by S. Gopal and Uma Iyengar) (July 2003) *The Essential Writings of Jawaharlal Nehru* Oxford University Press ISBN 0-19-565324-6
- *Autobiography: Toward freedom*, Oxford University Press
- *Jawaharlal Nehru: Life and work* by M. Chalapathi Rau, National Book Club (1 January 1966)
- *Jawaharlal Nehru* by M. Chalapathi Rau. [New Delhi] Publications Division, Ministry of Information and Broadcasting, Govt. of India [197

\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*



# GRAMMAR SECTION

Comment [g3]: done



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 1</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Noun and Pronoun (Part of Speech)</b>	

### Structure of Lesson

- 1.1 Learning Objectives
- 1.2 Introduction
- 1.3 Main Body of the Text
  - 1.3.1 Definition of Noun
  - 1.3.2 Types of Noun
    - a. Proper noun
    - b. Common Noun
    - c. Abstract Noun
    - d. Concrete noun
    - e. Collective noun
    - f. Countable and Uncountable noun
- 1.4 Noun Usage
  - 1.4.1 Number: Singular and Plural Noun
  - 1.4.2 Noun: Gender
  - 1.4.3 General rules of changing gender
- 1.5 Further Main Body of the Text
  - 1.5.1 Pronoun - Persons
  - 1.5.2 Gender of the Pronoun
  - 1.5.3 Types of Pronoun-
    - a. Personal Pronoun



- b. Reflexive Pronoun
- c. Emphatic Pronoun
- d. Demonstrative Pronoun
- e. Indefinite Pronoun
- f. Distributive Pronoun
- g. Relative Pronoun

## **1.6 Check Your Progress**

## **1.7 Summary**

## **1.8 Keywords**

## **1.9 Self-Assessment Test**

## **1.10 Answers to Check Your Progress**

## **1.11 References /Suggested Readings**

### **1.1 Learning Objectives**

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- To identify various parts of the speech; choose their correct form and use them effectively.
- Define noun and pronoun.
- Explain all types of noun.
- Use all types of pronoun.

### **1.2- Introduction**

Learning about the parts of speech is the first step in grammar study just as learning the letters of the Alphabet is the first step to being able to read and write. From learning the Parts of Speech, we begin to understand the use or function of words and how words are joined together to make meaningful communication. To understand what a part of speech is, you must understand the idea of putting



similar things together into groups or categories. Let's look at some examples of categories. From learning the parts of speech, we begin to understand the use or function of words and how words are joined together to make meaningful communication. To understand what a part of speech is, you must understand the idea of putting similar things together into groups or categories.

### 1.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 1.3.1- Definition of Noun

A Noun is a word used as the name of a person, place, or a thing. It includes the name of an object that we can perceive through our senses (sight, smell, touch, hearing, taste) as well as an object about which we can think but cannot perceive through the senses.

#### 1.3.2 Types of Noun

- a. **Proper noun:** They are the names of particular persons, places, animal, objects, etc. A proper name is always written with a capital letter in the beginning.

For Example: Himalaya is the tallest mountain in India. Here Himalaya and India are the names of one specific mountain and one specific country respectively and cannot be applied to any another mountain and country; and hence they are proper names.

- b. **Common noun:** Nouns other than proper nouns are called common nouns.

For example -In the above given sentence, mountain is a general category indicating the geographical structure and hence it is a common noun. Common nouns can be Abstract nouns or Concrete nouns.

- c. **Abstract noun:** Abstract nouns denote the ideas, qualities, and emotions about which we can think but which cannot be perceived by using our senses.

For Example: courage, kindness, beauty, honesty etc.



- d. **Concrete noun:** Concrete nouns denote the animate or inanimate objects that can be perceived through our senses.

For Example- book, road, cup, telephone, water, noise etc.

- e. **Collective noun:** They stand for a group of persons, animals, birds etc and various other objects which are taken together as a unit.

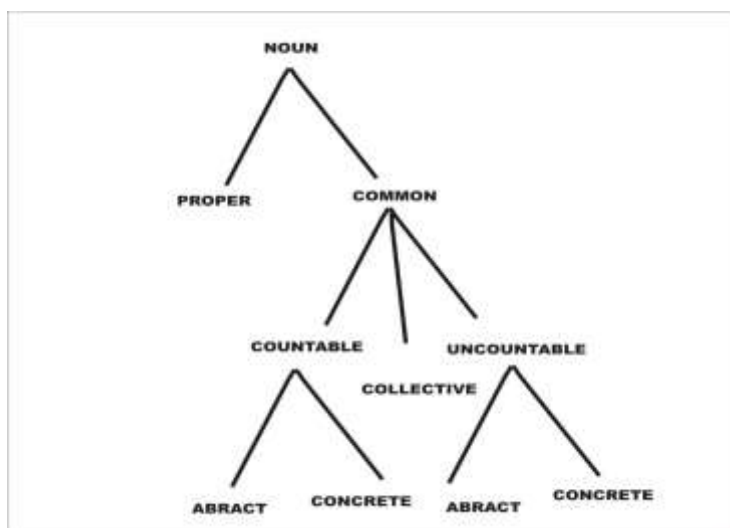
For Example: Army, fleet, police, herd, swarm, flock and so on.

- f. **Countable and Uncountable noun:** Countable nouns are the names of the objects that can be counted. Countable nouns have both singular and plural form.

For Example- cat, person, note, table etc.

Uncountable nouns are the names of materials, substances, concepts, qualities and such things which are not individual objects and cannot be divided into separate elements. For example: milk, sugar, cake, kindness, love, water, smoke, electricity.

Uncountable nouns are always treated as singular form and they use singular verb.



#### 1.4 Noun Usage



**1.4.1: Number: Singular and Plural Noun**

A noun that denotes single number is called singular For Example: boy, crow, bag,

A noun that denotes many numbers is called plural. For Example: boys, crows, bags,

General Rules to form plural: The plural form of most of the nouns can be obtained by adding 's' to the singular form. For Example: Boy, Tree, River, Cap Boys, Trees, Rivers, Caps. In nouns ending in s, sh, Ch., x, and z, the plural form is obtained by adding 'es' to the singular form.

For Example: Class, Bush, Watch, Box, Quiz, Fuzz Classes, Bushes, Watches, Boxes, Quizzes, Fuzzes

**Note :** In case of nouns ending in 'z', if the noun has double z at the end in the singular form then 'es' is directly added to the singular form to form the plural ; but if the singular form has single 'z' at the end then 'z' is added to the singular form before adding 'es' to form the plural

i) Nouns ending in 'y' and preceded by consonant form the plurals by changing 'y' to 'i' and adding 'es' to the singular form.

For Example: Lady Duty Story Berries, Ladies Duties Stories Berries

ii) In nouns ending in 'o', plurals are formed by adding 'es' or 's' to the singular form.

For Example: Mango Buffalo Piano Ratio

Mangoes, Buffaloes, pianos, Ratios

iii) Nouns ending in 'f' or 'fe' form their plural by changing 'f' or 'fe' to 'v' and adding 'es' to the singular form.

For Example: Mango, Buffalo, Piano, Ratio

For Example: Leaf Self Life, Leaves Selves lives

There are exceptions to this rule. Some instances are given below.

For Example: Roof Chief Dwarfs



Roofs Chiefs Dwarfs

iv) In few noun plurals are formed by changing inside vowel of the singular form.

For Example: Man, Tooth Mouse Foot

Men Teeth Mice Feet

**Note:** The plural forms of compound nouns given below Mother-in-law Step-son Passer-by Commander-in-chief Mothers-in-law Step-sons Passers-by Commanders-in-chief.

**1.4.2: Noun: Gender:** Gender means sex distinction. In English There are two genders – Masculine and Feminine. The absence of gender implies Neuter gender.

A Noun that expresses maleness is called masculine gender. A Noun that expresses femaleness is called feminine gender. A Noun that can be used to express maleness as well as femaleness is called a common noun. A Noun that is used to denote a genderless thing is called a neuter noun.

#### 1.4.3: General rules of changing gender

- Some nouns have specially assigned words for feminine gender.

For Example: Boy Father Son Boar Cock Bull Girl Mother Daughter Sow Hen Cow

- In some nouns the feminine form is obtained by adding 'ess' to the masculine form.

For Example: Host Lion Priest Baron, Hostess Lioness Priestess Baroness

- In some nouns the inner vowel is dropped and 'ess' is added to the masculine form to get feminine form.

For Example: Actor Master Waite Emperor, Actress Mistress Waitress Empress

- Though the suffix 'ess' is commonly used to change the gender there are some irregular suffixes used to form the feminine form. For Example: Czar Hero Signor, Czarina Heroine Signora.



- Sometimes a word is placed before or after the masculine noun to form the feminine form.

For Example: Bull- calf He-goat Grand-father Milk –man Cow-calf She-goat Grand-mother Milk-maid General Rules to form plural Mothers-in-law Step-sons Passers-by Commanders.

## 1.5 Further Main Body of the Text

### 1.5.1 Pronoun: Persons

Pronoun is a word used in the place of a noun.

For Example: Neeta woke up late. Neeta slept late at night.

Neeta woke up late, because she slept late at night. Here 'She' is used instead of Neeta, so it is a Pronoun. Since nouns follow number and gender, pronouns too follow them. 'He' is masculine pronoun, 'she' is feminine and 'it' is neuter one. 'He, She, It, I, singular pronouns while 'we', 'our', 'us', 'they' are plural pronouns. When we talk to others, we refer to ourselves as 'I' or 'we'; the person to whom we are talking as you and the person or thing about we are talking as 'he', 'she' or 'it'. This is called, persons. Thus, the relationship between the addresser, the addressee and the subject of the address is called persons. There are three persons in English language. See the table below.

Persons Singular Plural

1st I we

2nd you

3rd he they, She, They, It, they

### 1.5.2 - Gender of the pronoun

- First Person Pronouns: Masculine or Feminine
- Second Person Pronouns: Masculine or Feminine
- Third Person Pronouns: He –Masculine



➤ She-Feminine

It-Neuter

They- Any gender can be applied as per the specification.

### 1.5.3- Types of Pronoun

#### a. Personal Pronoun

The pronouns that denote various persons are called personal pronoun. Generally, 'it' substitutes a noun representing inanimate object, so it is called impersonal pronoun.

Read the following sentences carefully to understanding the use of impersonal pronouns

It was at school that the two friends met.

It was raining heavily.

Note that 'it' does not work as a substitute for any noun.

**b. Reflexive Pronoun:** When 'self' is added to personal pronouns, compound personal pronouns are formed.

For Example- Myself, himself depending upon the use of the compound personal pronouns, there are two types.

Read the following sentences carefully.

i) ram killed himself in despair.

ii) At last they found themselves sitting in the stadium.

Here you will notice that, the compound personal pronouns are the objects of the respective verbs and they refer to the respective subjects. Here, 'himself' refers to 'he' and 'ourselves' refer to 'we'. Thus, they help to reflect the action back to the subject. Hence, they are called Reflexive Pronouns.



**c. Emphatic Pronoun:** Here you will notice that compound personal pronouns (words in bold) are used to emphasize the action; and hence they are called Emphatic pronouns.

I myself saw the girl yesterday.

You yourself have to do it.

**d. Demonstrative Pronoun:** The pronouns that are used to refer to and point out the objects are called Demonstrative Pronouns.

For Example:

i) That is his house.

ii) These are my options for the extracurricular activities.

iii) Both the dresses are of reasonable price but this one is cheaper than that.

Here 'that', 'these' and 'both' point out the objects that are the subjects of the respective sentences.

**e. Indefinite Pronoun:** In all the above given sentences, 'one', 'none', 'they', 'someone' refer to person or persons in general but they do not stand for a particular person or persons. Hence, they are called Indefinite pronouns. Thus, the pronouns that refer to a person, persons or things in general are called Indefinite pronouns

Read the following sentences carefully.

a) One should exercise regularly to stay healthy.

b) None of her arguments were true.

c) They believed him to be a generous man.

d) Someone should come forward.



**Note:** In the sentence number (d) above, you will notice that ‘someone’ is a compound word and it is called compound indefinite pronoun. Other such pronouns are ‘anyone, ‘anybody’, ‘anything’, ‘everyone’, ‘everybody’, ‘everything’ ‘none’, ‘nobody’, ‘nothing’, ‘somebody’, ‘something’ ‘another’.

**f. Distributive Pronoun:** Here you will notice that ‘each’, ‘either’, ‘neither’ refer to the persons or things, one at a time; and hence they are called Distributive Pronouns. Thus, the pronouns that are used to denote singular person or thing one at a time are called Distributive Pronouns. They always use singular verb.

- Each of the boys took his turn on the guard duty.
- Either of us should go at the railway station.
- Neither of the key was fitting the lock.

**g. Relative Pronoun:** Thus, the pronoun that refers to or relates to the antecedent is called Relative Pronoun ‘who’, ‘whom’, ‘what’, ‘which’, ‘whose’ and ‘that’ are the Relative Pronouns. Adding ‘ever’ and ‘so ever’ to the Relative Pronouns, (except ‘that’) you get Compound Relative Pronouns, ‘whosoever’, ‘whoever’, ‘whomsoever’, ‘whichever’, ‘whatsoever’, ‘whatever’.

Seema is the girl. We met Seema at the mall yesterday.

Seema is the girl whom we met at the mall yesterday

. Here you will observe that ‘whom, the pronoun stands for ‘Seema’ the antecedent.

For Example: Whoever comes first will get the seat.

## 1.6 Check Your Progress

**Pick out Nouns and Pronouns in the following sentences.**

### 1. Recognize the kinds of Noun-

- a) An apple was lying on the table.
- b) Love begets love.
- c) We cannot live without Air.



- d) The jury has given its verdict.
- e) The Hindus regards Krishna as an incarnation of Lord Vishnu.

## 2. Use appropriate Pronoun-

- a) When I have guests, I myself cook dinner for .....
- b) When she realized her mistake, she laughed at .....
- c) Susie prevented me from entering ..... room.
- d) She yelled at ..... without any provocation.
- e) That is .....

## 3. Recognize Noun in the sentences-

- a) They arrived early but at the wrong station.
- b) We counted only six different colours in the rainbow.
- c) The man was trying to steal a horse with a cart full of apple.

### 1.7 Summary

- A noun is a word used to name a person, animal, place, thing, and abstract idea.
- A common noun is a noun referring to a person, place, or thing in a general sense - usually, you should write it with a capital letter only when it begins a sentence.
- A concrete noun is a noun which names anything (or anyone) that you can perceive through your physical senses: touch, sight, taste, hearing, or smell.
- A countable noun (or count noun) is a noun with both a singular and a plural form, and it names anything (or anyone) that you can count.
- A collective Noun is a noun naming a group of things, animals, or persons.
- A personal Pronoun refers to a specific person or thing and changes its form to indicate person, number, gender, and case.
- A demonstrative pronoun points to and identifies a noun or a pronoun.



- An indefinite pronoun is a pronoun referring to an identifiable but not specified person or thing. An indefinite pronoun conveys the idea of all, any, none, or some.

### 1.8 Keywords

- **Noun:** It is name of person, place or things.
- **Interrogative Pronoun:** Used to ask questions.
- **Intensive Pronoun:** Used to emphasise its antecedent.

### 1.9 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQ)

State whether the following statements are true or false:

- a) 'He' is an objective pronoun.
- b) Interrogative pronoun used to ask questions.
- c) Whomever is an Interrogative pronoun.
- d) Myself is a Reflexive pronoun.

### 1.10 Answers to Check your progress:

#### Ans.1

- a) (Pen – Common Noun; table – Common Noun)
- b) (Love – Abstract Noun)
- c) (Water – Material Noun)
- d) (Jury – collective noun; verdict – Abstract Noun)
- e) (Hindus – Proper Noun; Krishna – Proper Noun; Incarnation – Common Noun; Vishnu – Proper Noun)

#### Ans.2

- a) When I have guests, I myself cook dinner for them.
- b) When she realized her mistake, she laughed at herself.
- c) Sam prevented me from entering his room.
- d) She yelled at me without any provocation.
- e) That is mine.





**Ans.3**

- a) They arrived early but at the wrong station.
- b) We counted only six different colours in the rainbow
- c) The man was trying to steal a horse with a cart full of apple

**1.11 References /Suggested Readings:**

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. BHATNAGAR
- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR.G.S. MANSUKHANI.
- A background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications Online links  
<http://www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/nounchar.html>
- <http://grammar.ccc.commnet.edu/grammar/plurals.htm>



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 2</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Verbs and Adverbs (Part of Speech)</b>	

## Structure of Lesson

### 2.1 Learning Objectives

### 2.2 Introduction

### 2.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 2.3.0 Verbs and Its Classification

##### 2.3.1 Helping Verbs

##### 2.3.2 Main verbs

##### 2.3.3 Transitive and Intransitive verbs

###### a. Transitive Verbs

###### b. Intransitive Verbs

##### 2.3.4 Linking Verbs

##### 2.3.5 Dynamic and Stative verbs

##### 2.3.6 Regular and Irregular Verbs

### 2.4 Application-Verbs and Tenses

#### 2.4.1 Verbs and Tenses Usage

##### a. Present Indefinite Tense/ Simple Present

##### b. Present Continuous Tense

##### c. Present Perfect Tense



- d. Present Perfect Continuous Tense
- e. Past Indefinite Tense/ Simple Past
- f. Past Continuous Tense
- g. Past Perfect Tense
- h. Past Perfect Continuous Tense
- i. Future Indefinite Tense/ Simple Future
- j. Future Continuous Tense
- k. Future Perfect Tense
- l. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

## **2.5 Further Main Body of the Text**

### **2.5.0 Adverbs and Its Classification**

#### **2.5.1 Adverbs**

#### **2.5.2 Adverbs of Manner**

#### **2.5.3 Adverbs of Place or Location**

#### **2.5.4 Adverbs of Time**

#### **2.5.5 Adverbs of Degree**

## **2.6 Usage of Adverbs**

### **2.6.1 Adverbs Modifying Adjectives**

### **2.6.2 Adverbs Modifying Adverbs**

### **2.6.3 Adverbs Modifying Nouns**

### **2.6.4 Adverbs Modifying Noun Phrases**

### **2.6.5 Adverbs Modifying Determiners, Pronouns**

## **2.7 Check Your Progress**

## **2.8 Summary**

## **2.9 Keywords**

## **2.10 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)**

## **2.11 Answers to check your progress**



## 2.12 References/ Suggested Readings

### 2.1 Learning Objectives

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- Know about verbs and adverbs
- Explain helping verbs and main verbs
- Explain present, past and future tenses.

### 2.2 Introduction

The verb is king in English. The shortest sentence contains a verb. You can make a one-word sentence with a verb, for example: “Stop!” You cannot make a one-word sentence with any other type of word. Verbs are sometimes described as “action words”. This is partly true. Many verbs give the idea of action, of “doing” something. For example, words like run, fight, do and works all convey action. But some verbs do not give the idea of action; they give the idea of existence, of state, of being”. For example, verbs like be, exist, seem and belong all convey state.

A verb always has a subject. (In the sentence “John speaks English”, John is the subject and speaks is the verb.) In simple terms, therefore, we can say that verbs are words that tell us what a subject does or is; they describe:

- action (Ram plays football.)
- state (Anthony seems kind.)

There is something very special about verbs in English. Most other words (adjectives, adverbs, prepositions etc. do not change in form (although nouns can have singular and plural forms). But almost all verbs change in form. For example, the verb to work has five forms:

- to work, work, works, worked, working



Of course, this is still very few forms compared to some languages which may have thirty or more forms for a single verb.

## 2.3 Main Body of the Text

### 2.3.0 Verbs and Its Classification

A word or phrase that describes an action, condition, or experience:

The words "run", "keep", and "feel" are all verbs.

**Verbs Classification.** We divide verbs into two broad classifications:

#### 2.3.1 Helping Verbs –

Helping verbs have no meaning on their own. They are necessary for the grammatical structure of a sentence, but they do not tell us very much alone. We usually use helping verbs with main verbs. They “help” the main verb (which has the real meaning). There are only about 15 helping verbs in English, and we divide them into two basic groups:

Notes - Helping verbs are also called “auxiliary verbs. Primary helping verbs (3 verbs). These are the verbs be, do, and have.

Note that we can use these three verbs as helping verbs or as main verbs. On this page we talk about them as helping verbs. We use them in the following cases:

- **be**

to make continuous tenses (He is watching TV.)

to make the passive (Small fish are eaten by big fish.)

- **have**

to make perfect tenses (I have finished my homework.)

- **do**

to make negatives (I do not like you.)



to ask questions (Do you want some coffee?)

to show emphasis (I do want you to pass your exam.)

to stand for a main verb in some constructions (He speaks faster than she does.)

Modal helping verbs (10 verbs)

We use modal helping verbs to “modify” the meaning of the main verb in some way. A modal helping verb expresses necessity or possibility, and changes the main verb in that sense. These are the modal verbs:

- **can, could**
- **may, might**
- **will, would,**
- **shall, should**
- **must**
- **ought to**

Here are examples using modal verbs:

- I can't speak Chinese.
- John may arrive late.
- Would you like a cup of coffee?
- You should see a doctor.
- I really must go now.

Semi-modal verbs (3 verbs)

- **need**
- **dare**
- **used to**



Task Write down 10 sentences containing helping verb and main verb and mention the types of verb.

Imagine that A stranger walks into your room and says:

- I can.
- People must.
- The Earth will.

Do you understand anything? Has this person communicated anything to you? Probably not! That's because these verbs are helping verbs and have no meaning on their own. They are necessary for the grammatical structure of the sentence, but they do not tell us very much alone. We usually use helping verbs with main verbs. They "help" the main verb. (The sentences in the above examples are therefore incomplete. They need at least a main verb to complete the, there are only about 15 helping verbs.

### **2.3.2 Main Verbs**

Main verbs have meaning on their own (unlike helping verbs). There are thousands of main verbs, and we can classify them in several ways:

Notes - Main verbs are also called "lexical verbs".

Now imagine that the same stranger walks into your room and says:

- I teach.
- People eat.
- The Earth rotates.

Do you understand something? Has this person communicated something to you? Probably yes! Not a lot, but something. That's because these verbs are main verbs and have meaning on their own. They tell us something. Of course, there are



thousands of main verbs. In the following table we see example sentences with helping verbs and main verbs.

Notice that all of these sentences have a main verb. Only some of them have a helping verb.

John likes coffee.

You lied to me.

They are happy.

The children are playing.

We must go now.

I do not want any.

### **2.3.3 Transitive and intransitive verbs**

A transitive verb takes a direct object: Somebody killed the President. An intransitive verb does not have a direct object: He died. Many verbs, like speak, can be transitive or intransitive.

Look at these examples:

#### **a. Transitive:**

- I saw an elephant.
- We are watching TV.
- He speaks English.

#### **b. Intransitive:**

- He has arrived.
- John goes to school.

### **2.3.4 Linking verbs**





A linking verb does not have much meaning in itself. It “links” the subject to what is said about the subject. Usually, a linking verb shows equality (=) or a change to a different state or place (>). Linking verbs are always intransitive (but not all intransitive verbs are linking verbs).

- Mary is a teacher. (Mary = teacher)
- Tara is beautiful. (Tara = beautiful)
- That sounds interesting. (that = interesting)
- The sky became dark. (the sky > dark)
- The bread has gone bad. (bread > bad)

### 2.3.5 Dynamic and stative verbs

Some verbs describe action. They are called “dynamic”, and can be used with continuous tenses. Other verbs describe state (non-action, a situation). They are called “stative”, and cannot normally be used with continuous tenses (though some of them can be used with continuous tenses with change in meaning).

Dynamic verbs (examples):

- hit, explode, fight, run, go

Stative verbs (examples):

- be
- like, love, prefer, wish
- impress, please, surprise
- hear, see, sound
- belong to, consist of, contain, include, need
- appear, resemble, seem

### 2.3.6 Regular and Irregular Verbs



This is more a question of vocabulary than of grammar. The only real difference between regular and irregular verbs is that they have different endings for their past tense and past participle forms. For regular verbs, the past tense ending and past participle ending is always the same: -ed. For irregular verbs, the past tense ending and the past participle ending is variable, so it is necessary to learn them by heart.

regular verbs: base, past tense, past participle

- look, looked, looked
- work, worked, worked

irregular verbs: base, past tense, past participle

- buy, bought, bought
- cut, cut, cut
- do, did, done

- **Regular verbs-**

English regular verbs change their form very little (unlike irregular verbs). The past tense and past participle of regular verbs end in -ed, for example: work, worked, worked. But you should note the following points:

- 1 Some verbs can be both regular and irregular, for example: learn, learned, learned, learn, learnt, learnt.
2. Some verbs change their meaning depending on whether they are regular or irregular, for example "to hang": regular hang, hanged, hanged to kill or die, by dropping with a rope around the neck irregular hang, hung, hung to fix something (for example, a picture) at the top so that the lower part is free
3. The present tense of some regular verbs is the same as the past tense of some irregular verbs:

regular found, founded, founded



irregular find, found, found

- **Irregular verbs –**

Irregular verbs are an important feature of English. We use irregular verbs a lot when speaking, less when writing. Of course, the most famous English verb of all, the verb “to be”, is irregular. What is the difference between regular verbs and irregular verbs? Base Form Past Simple, Past Participle With regular verbs, the rule is simple...

The past simple and past participle finish finished always end in-ed:

stop stopped, stopped

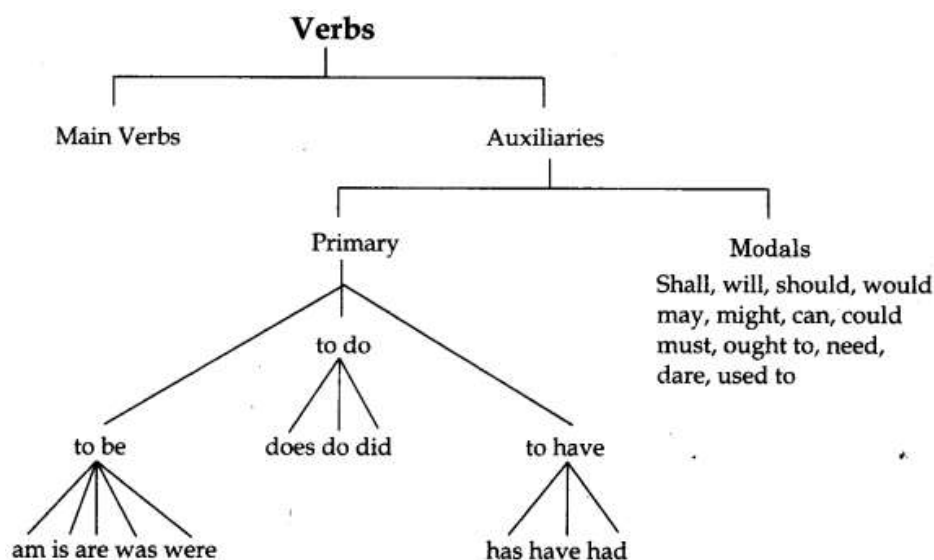
work, worked, worked

But with irregular verbs, there is no rule...

Sometimes the verb changes completely: sing, sang, sung

Sometimes there is “half” a change: buy, bought, bought

Sometimes there is no change: cut, cut, cut.





## 2.4 Application- Verbs and Tenses

### 2.4.1 Verbs and Tenses Usage

#### a. Present Indefinite Tense/ Simple Present -Subject + main verb (V1)

Ram plays cricket. Rita swims.

#### **Negative** - Subject + don't/ doesn't main verb (V1)

Ram does not play cricket.

They do not swim.

#### b. Present Continuous Tense - Subject + (Is/Are) + main verb + ing.

She is staying in London.

Rita is playing.

#### **Negative** - Subject + (Is/Are) + not + main verb + ing.

Sita is not staying in London.

They are not playing football.

#### c. Present Perfect Tense -Subject + auxiliary verb (Has/Have) + past participle (V3)

I have done.

She has played tennis.

#### **Negative** - Subject + auxiliary verb (Has/Have) + not + past participle (V3)

I have not done.

She has not played tennis.

#### d. Present Perfect Continuous Tense - subject + Has/have + auxiliary verb (been) + main verb + ing

I have been doing.

You have been talking too much.



**Negative** - Subject + Has/have + not + auxiliary verb (been) + main verb + ing

You had not been playing tennis.

It had not been working well.

**e. Past Indefinite Tense/ Simple Past** - Subject + V2

I sang.

He went to school.

**Negative** - Subject + did not + V1

He did not come.

They did not speak English.

**f. Past Continuous Tense** - Subject + auxiliary verb BE (Was/Were) + main verb + ing

I was doing. You were working

Subject + auxiliary verb BE (Was/Were) + not + main verb + ing

I was not doing.

They were not playing football.

**g. Past Perfect Tense** - Subject + (Had) + past participle (V3)

I had sung.

Ram had finished his work.

**Negative**- Subject + (Had) + not + past participle (V3)

I had not sung.

Ram had not finished his work.

**h. Past Perfect Continuous Tense** - Subject + Had + Been + Main verb + ing

I had been doing.



You had been playing tennis.

**Negative** - Subject + Had + not + Been + Main verb + ing

You had not been playing tennis.

Reema has not been running.

**i. Future Indefinite Tense/ Simple Future** - subject + auxiliary verb (will) + main verb (V1)

I will do.

Mohan will play cricket.

**Negative** - Subject + auxiliary verb (will) not + main verb (V1)

She will not play.

They will not play

**j. Future Continuous Tense** - subject + auxiliary verb (will) + auxiliary verb BE + main verb + Ing

I will be doing.

You will be lying on a beach tomorrow.

**Negative** - subject + auxiliary verb (will) + not + auxiliary verb BE + main verb + Ing

I will not be doing.

You will not be lying on a beach tomorrow.

**k. Future Perfect Tense** - Subject + auxiliary verb (will) + auxiliary verb have / + past participle (V3)

I will have done.

You will have forgotten me by then.

**Negative** - Subject + (will) + not have + past participle (V3)

I will not have done.



She will not have gone to school.

**1. Future Perfect Continuous Tense** - Subject + will + have + auxiliary verb been + main verb + Ing

I will have been doing.

You will have been travelling for two days.

**Negative** - Subject + will + not + have + auxiliary verb been + main verb + Ing

I will not have been doing.

You will not have been travelling for two days.

## 2.5 Further Main Body of the Text

### 2.5.0 Adverbs and Its Classification

#### 2.5.1 Adverbs:

An adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a Verb; an Adjective; another adverb; a Noun or Noun Phrase; Determiner; a Numeral; a Pronoun; or a Prepositional Phrase and can sometimes be used as a Complement of a Preposition.

#### Adverbs Spelling Notes-

- Adjectives ending-l still take -ly; careful-carefully.
- Adjectives ending-y change to-ily; lucky-luckily.
- Adjectives ending “ble”, change to-bly responsible-responsibly.

#### 2.5.2 Adverbs of Manner-

Adverbs of manner modify a verb to describe the way the action is done.

Example: She did the work carefully.

(‘Carefully’ modifies the verb to describe the way the work was done, as opposed to quickly, carelessly, etc.)



### 2.5.3 Adverbs of Place or Location-

Adverbs of place show where the action is done.

Example: They live locally.

### 2.5.4 Adverbs of Time-

Adverbs of time show when an action is done, or the duration or frequency. Example:

He did it yesterday. (When)

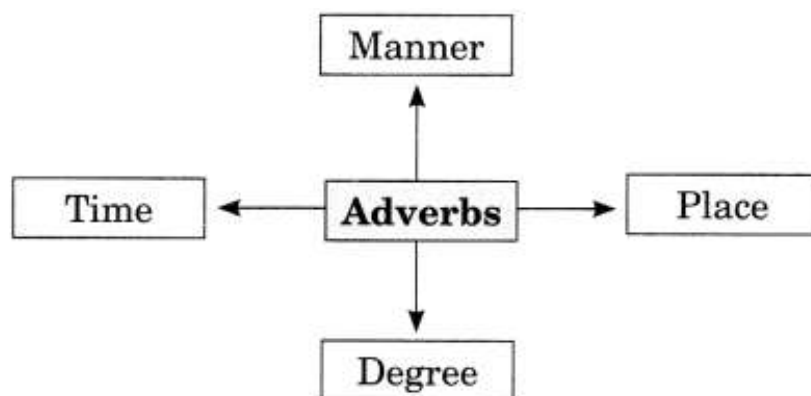
They are permanently busy. (Duration)

She never does it. (Frequency)

### 2.5.5 Adverbs of Degree-

Adverbs of degree increase or decrease the effect of the verb.

Example: I completely agree with you. (This increases the effect of the verb, whereas 'partially' would decrease it.



## 2.6 Usage of Adverbs

### 2.6.1 Adverbs Modifying Adjectives-

An adjective can be modified by an adverb, which precedes the adjective, except 'enough' which comes after.





Example: That's really good.

It was a terribly difficult time for all of us. It wasn't good enough. ('Enough' comes after the adjective.)

**2.6.2 Adverbs Modifying Adverbs-** An adverb can modify another. As with adjectives, the adverb precedes the one it is modifying with 'enough' being the exception again.

Example: She did it really well.

He didn't come last night, funnily enough.

Task How adverb is different with adjective, explain with example.

### **2.6.3 Adverbs Modifying Nouns-**

Adverbs can modify nouns to indicate time or place. Example: The concert tomorrow

Example: The room upstairs

### **2.6.4 Adverbs Modifying Noun Phrases-**

Some adverbs of degree can modify noun phrases.

Example: We had quite a good time.

They're such good friends. Quite; rather; such; what (What a day!) can be used in this way.

### **2.6.5 Adverbs Modifying Determiners, Pronouns-**

Adverbs such as almost; nearly; hardly; about, etc., can be used:

Example: Almost everybody came in the end.

## **2.7 Check your progress-**

### **a. Do exercises related to verb and adverb-**

1. She saw a ghost. (Transitive/Intransitive)
2. My vase dropped and broke into pieces. (Transitive/Intransitive)



3. The deer \_\_\_\_\_ fighting.
4. The natives of this island \_\_\_\_\_ a friendly people.
5. A pair of gloves \_\_\_\_\_ what they have been looking for the whole hour.
6. He was taken \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of the night. (bad, badly)
7. My mother works \_\_\_\_\_ to support the family. (hard, hardly)
8. I carried the statue \_\_\_\_\_ in both hands. (careful, carefully)

**b. Choose the most suitable adverb from the following to fill in each blank:**

**across, anywhere, around, backwards, over**

1. In the park, you can go \_\_\_\_\_ and find a place to sit.
2. We thought it was fun to swim \_\_\_\_\_ the river.
3. They are there but we are not going \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to them.
4. There were many people walking \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.

**c. Choose the most suitable adverb from the following to fill in each blank:**

**always, ever, just, nearly, never, only, slightly, still, unusually, quietly.**

1. We hardly \_\_\_\_\_ see him go to church.
2. My father is \_\_\_\_\_ late for work.

**d. Place the adverbs in bracket in the correct position in the sentence.**

1. We walked to get there on time. (quickly)
2. The rain had stopped when I arrived. (already)
3. I have finished my exercise book. (nearly).

## 2.8 Summary

- The verb is king in English. The shortest sentence contains a verb.



• Most adverbs in English are formed by adding -ly to an Adjective. An adverb is a word that modifies the meaning of a Verb; an Adjective; another adverb; a Noun or Noun Phrase; Determiner; a Numeral; a Pronoun; or a Prepositional Phrase and can sometimes be used as a Complement of a Preposition.

## 2.9 Keywords

**Auxiliary verbs:** Helping verbs also called 'Auxiliary verbs.

**Lexical verbs:** Main verbs also called 'Lexical verbs.

**Ought to:** It is a modal helping verb.

**Used to:** It is semi-modal helping verb and partly like main verb.

**Adverb:** The word that modifies the meaning of a verb.

## 2.10 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQs)

– State whether the following statements are true or false:

1. Helping verb is also called 'lexical verb, why?
2. Difference between Main Verb and Helping Verb?
3. What is adverb? Explain with examples.
4. What is others name of helping verb and main verb?
5. Explain different types of verbs.

## 2.11 Answers to Check Your Progress-

- a.
1. (Transitive verbs – object: ghost)
  2. (Intransitive verbs – no object)
  3. The deer are fighting.
  4. The natives of this island are a friendly people.
  5. A pair of gloves is what they have been looking for the whole hour.



6. He was taken bad in the middle of the night
7. My mother works hard to support the family.
8. I carried the statue carefully in both hands.5

**b. - Ans. Choose the most suitable adverbs from the following to fill in each blank:**

**across, anywhere, around, backwards, over .**

1. In the park, you can go anywhere and find a place to sit.
2. We thought it was fun to swim across the river.
3. They are there but we are not going over to talk to them.
4. There were many people walking around in the park

**c. Ans. Choose the most suitable adverbs from the following to fill in each blank:**

**always, ever, just, nearly, never, only, quiet, slightly, still, unusually**

1. We hardly ever see him go to church.
2. My father is never late for work.

**d. Place the adverbs in bracket in the correct position in the sentence answers.**

1. We walked quickly to get there on time.
2. The rain had already stopped when I arrived.
3. I have nearly finished my exercise book.

## **2.12 References / Suggested Readings-**

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. Bhatnagar
- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR. G.S. Man Sukhmani.



- A Background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications .
- Online links
  - <http://grammar.ccc.commnet.edu/grammar/adverbs.htm>
  - <http://www.english-language-grammar-guide.com/types-of-verbs.html>



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson – 3</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Adjectives and Prepositions (Part of Speech)</b>	

### Structure of Lesson

#### 3.1 Learning Objectives

#### 3.2 Introduction

#### 3.3 Main Body of the Text

##### 3.3.0 Adjectives and Its Classification

##### 3.3.1 Adjectives

##### 3.3.2 Kinds of Adjectives

- a. Proper Adjective
- b. Descriptive Adjective
- c. Quantitative Adjective
- d. Numeral Adjective
- e. Demonstrative Adjective
- f. Distributive Adjectives
- g. Interrogative Adjectives
- h. Exclamatory Adjectives
- i. Possessive Adjective
- j. Emphasising Adjective

##### 3.3.3 Comparison of Adjectives

##### 3.3.4 Position of Adjectives

##### 3.3.5 Degrees of Adjectives

#### 3.4 Usage of Adjectives



**3.4.1 Adjectives subject to subjective measure**

**3.4.2 Capitalizing Proper Adjectives**

**3.4.3 Collective Adjectives**

**3.4.4 Adjectival Opposites**

**3.5 Further Main Body of the Text**

**3.5.0 Prepositions and Its Types**

**3.5.1 Prepositions**

**3.5.2 Prepositions of Time: at, on, and in**

**3.5.3 Prepositions of Place: at, on, and in**

**3.5.4 Prepositions of Location: in, at, and on and No Preposition**

**3.5.5 Prepositions of Time: for and since**

**3.6 Preposition and Its Usage**

**3.6.1 Prepositions with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs**

**3.6.2 Unnecessary Prepositions-**

**3.6.3 Important Words with Preposition**

**3.7 Check Your Progress**

**3.8 Summary**

**3.9 Keywords**

**3.10 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)**

**3.11 Answers to check your progress**

**3.12 Answers to check your progress**

**3.13 References/ Suggested Readings**



### 3.1 Learning Objectives

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain about parts of speech
- Understand the adjectives
- Use preposition in the sentences.

### 3.2 Introduction-

Based on their use and functions, words are categorized into several types or parts of speech. The parts of speech explain how a word is used in a sentence. There are eight parts of speech such as Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, preposition, conjunction and interjection. Adjective and Preposition are the important parts of grammar to qualify noun and pronoun. Adjective is a word, when used with a noun or pronoun add something to the meaning of noun or pronoun.

### 3.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 3.3.0 Adjectives and Its Classification

##### 3.3.1 Adjectives-

Adjectives are words that describe or modify another person or thing in the sentence. The Articles—a, an, and the—are adjectives. It is a word, when used with a noun or pronoun add something to the meaning of noun or pronoun.

1. She is a good singer.
2. I want some milk.
3. Radha gave me five rupees.
4. This is my book.

##### 3.3.2 Kinds of Adjectives

###### 1. Proper Adjective





2. **Descriptive Adjective/ Adjective of Quality**
3. **Quantitative Adjective/ Adjective of Quality**
4. **Numeral Adjective/ Adjective of Number**
5. **Demonstrative Adjective**
6. **Distributive Adjective**
7. **Interrogative Adjective**
8. **Exclamatory Adjective**
9. **Possessive Adjective**
10. **Emphasizing Adjective**

**a. Proper Adjective:**

These Adjectives are formed from proper Nouns. They always begin with a capital letter. For e.g. Indian Army, I enjoy Italian food.

**b. Descriptive Adjective:**

These adjectives show the quality or condition of a person or a thing.

Delhi is a big city.

I have a black dog.

She is a beautiful lady.

**c. Quantitative Adjective:**

These adjectives tell us about the quantity or degree of a thing for eg. Any, all, whole, no, none, some, little, enough, sufficient, full, entire etc.

**d. Numeral Adjective:**

Adjective of number show how many persons or things are meant, or in what order a person or thing stands. For e.g. one, two, first, second, all, none, some, any, several, sundry, certain, every, either, neither, each etc.



**e. Demonstrative Adjective:** These adjectives point out which person or thing is meant e.g. this, that, these, those, such some, etc.

**f. Distributive Adjectives:** These adjectives show that the persons or things are to be taken independently or in separate lots. E.g. each, every, either, neither etc.

**g. Interrogative Adjectives:** What, which and whose, when, they are used with nouns to ask questions, are called Interrogative adjectives; as,

Whose pen is this?

Which road should we take?

**h. Exclamatory Adjectives:** These adjectives are used in an exclamatory sense.

What a beautiful garden!

What a piece of art!

**i. Possessive Adjective:**

My, his, her, your, their, our, are possessive adjectives which indicate possession, when used before a noun to qualify it.

**j. Emphasising Adjectives:**

These adjectives are used before the noun to emphasize the noun. For e.g. He took his own car. Formation of Adjectives. Many Adjectives are formed from Nouns:

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
Boy	Boyish	Dirt	Dirty
Care	Careful	Courage	Courageous
Sense	Senseless	Envy	Envious
Silk	Silken	King	Kingly
Gold	Golden	Gift	Gifted
Play	Playful	Storm	Stormy
Hope	Hopeful	Pardon	Pardonable



Some Adjectives are formed from verbs:

Verb	Adjective	Verb	Adjective
Tire	Tireless	Move	Moveable
Talk	Talkative	Cease	Ceaseless

Some Adjectives are formed from other Adjectives:

Adjective	Adjective	Adjective	Adjective
Tragic	Tragical	White	Whitish
Three	Threefold	Black	Blackish
Sick	Sick	Brave	Bravely

### 3.3.3 Comparison of Adjectives

Comparison of adjective can be shown by changing the forms of adjectives. Look at the following sentences:

1. Radha's mango is sweet.
2. Ram's mango is sweeter than Radha's.
3. Gopal's mango is the sweetest of all.

The Adjective sweet is said to be in positive degree.

The Adjective sweeter is said to be in comparative degree.

The Adjective sweetest is said to be in superlative degree.

Comparative degree is used when comparison is made between two things.

Superlative degree is used when more than two things are compared.

#### Formation of Comparative and superlative:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Clever	Cleverer	Cleverest



Kind	Kinder	Kindest
Young	Younger	Youngest
Great	Greater	Greatest
Fast	Faster	Fastest
Large	Larger	Largest
Busy	Busier	Busiest
Easy	Easier	Easiest
Wealthy	Wealthier	Wealthiest
Beautiful	More beautiful	Most beautiful
Learned	More learned	Most learned
Difficult	More difficult	Most difficult
Good	Better	Best
Bad	Worse	Worst
Much (quantity)	More	Most
Many (Number)	More	Most
Little	Less	Least

**Exercises:**

Pick out the adjectives in the following sentences, also identify the type of adjective.

1. He is a man of few words.
2. Every student has a book.
3. Alwar is a small city.
4. He gave me ten books.
5. Raman is a good boy.



6. Ankita won second prize.
7. My brother lives in next house.
8. He was absent last week.
9. This boy is stronger than Ravi.
10. I have taught you many things

### 3.3.4 Position of Adjectives

Adverbs which often seem capable of popping up almost anywhere in a sentence, adjectives nearly always appear immediately before the noun or noun phrase that they modify. Sometimes they appear in a string of adjectives, and when they do, they appear in a set order according to category. When indefinite pronouns—such as something, someone, and anybody—are modified by an adjective, the adjective comes after the pronoun: Anyone capable of doing something horrible to someone nice should be punished.

### 3.3.5 Degrees of Adjectives:

Adjectives can express degrees of modification:

- Gladys is a rich woman, but Josie is richer than Gladys, and Sadie is the richest woman in town.

**Notes-** The degrees of comparison are known as the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

(Actually, only the comparative and superlative show degrees.) We use the comparative for comparing two things and the superlative for comparing three or more things. Notice that the word *than* frequently accompanies the comparative and the word *the* precedes the superlative. The inflected suffixes *-er* and *-est* suffice to form most comparatives and superlatives, when a two-syllable adjective ends in



(happier and happiest); otherwise we use more and most when an adjective has more than one syllable.

Positive, Comparative, Superlative

Rich Richer Richest

Lovely lovelier loveliest

Beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful

Certain adjectives have irregular forms in the comparative and superlative degrees:

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

good, better, best

bad, worse, worst

**Note-** Premodifiers with Degrees of Adjectives Both adverbs and adjectives in their comparative and superlative forms can be accompanied by premodifiers, single words and phrases, that intensify the degree.

- We were a lot more careful this time.
- He works a lot less carefully than the other jeweller in town.
- We like his work so much better.
- You'll get your watch back all the faster.

The categories in the following table can be described as follows:

(i) Determiners—articles and other limiters.

(ii) Observation—post determiners and limiter adjectives (e.g., a real hero, a perfect idiot)

### 3.4 Usage of Adjectives

#### 3.4.1 Adjectives subject to subjective measure

(e.g., beautiful, interesting)



(iii) Size and Shape—adjectives subject to objective measure (e.g., wealthy, large, round)

(iv) Age—adjectives denoting age (e.g., young, old, new, ancient)

(v) Colour—adjectives denoting colour (e.g., red, black, pale)

(vi) Origin—denominal adjectives denoting source of noun (e.g., French, American, Canadian)

(vii) Material—denominal adjectives denoting what something is made of (e.g., woolen, metallic, wooden)

(viii) Qualifier—final limiter, often regarded as part of the noun (e.g., rocking chair, hunting cabin, passenger car, book cover) Determiner Observation Physical Description Origin Material Qualifier Noun .Size Shape Age Colour ,a beautiful old Italian touring car , an expensive antique silver mirror, four gorgeous long- red silk roses, stemmed, her short black hair , our big old English sheep, dog, those square wooden hat boxes that dilapidated little hunting cabin several enormous young American basketball players ,some delicious Thai food.

### **.3.4.2 Capitalizing Proper Adjectives:**

When an adjective owes its origins to a proper noun, it should probably be capitalized. Thus we write about Christian music, French fries, the English Parliament, the Ming Dynasty, a Faulknerian style, democracy. Some periods of time have taken on the status of proper adjectives: the Nixon era, a Renaissance/Romantic/Victorian poet (but a contemporary novelist and medieval writer). Directional and seasonal adjectives are not capitalized unless they're part of a title: We took the northwest route during the spring thaw. We stayed there until the town's annual Fall Festival of Small Appliances.

### **3.4.3 Collective Adjectives**



When the definite article is combined with an adjective describing a class or group of people, the resulting phrase can act as a noun: the poor, the rich, the oppressed, the homeless, the lonely, the unlettered, the unwashed, the gathered, the dear departed. The difference between a Collective Noun (which is usually regarded as singular but which can be plural in certain contexts) and a collective adjective is that the latter is always plural and requires a plural verb:

- The rural poor have been ignored by the media.
- The rich of Connecticut are responsible.
- The young at heart are always a joy to be around.

#### 3.4.4 Adjectival Opposites –

The opposite or the negative aspect of an adjective can be formed in a number of ways. One way, of course, is to find an adjective to mean the opposite—an antonym. The opposite of beautiful is ugly, the opposite of tall is short. A thesaurus can help you find an appropriate opposite. Another way to form the opposite of an adjective is with a number of prefixes. The opposite of fortunate is unfortunate, the opposite of prudent is imprudent, the opposite of considerate is inconsiderate, the opposite of honorable is dishonorable, the opposite of alcoholic is non-alcoholic, the opposite of being properly filed is misfiled. If you are not sure of the spelling of adjectives modified in this way by prefixes (or which is the appropriate prefix), you will have to consult a dictionary, as the rules for the selection of a prefix are complex and too shiftily to be trusted. The meaning itself can be tricky; for instance, flammable and inflammable mean the same thing.

A third means for creating the opposite of an adjective is to combine it with less or least to create a comparison which points in the opposite direction. He swims well. He knows only too well who the murderer is. However, when using a linking verb or a verb that has to do with the five human senses, you want to use the adjective instead.





- We were annoyed by the elephants.
- We were bored by the ringmaster.
- **Adjectives:** The most common of the so-called a- adjectives are ablaze, afloat, afraid, aghast, alert, alike, alive, alone, aloof, ashamed, asleep, averse, awake, aware. These adjectives will primarily show up as predicate adjectives (i.e., they come after a linking verb).
- The children were ashamed.
- The professor remained aloof.
- The trees were ablaze.

Occasionally, however, you will find a- adjectives before the word they modify: the alert patient, the aloof physician. Most of them, when found before the word they modify, are themselves modified: the nearly awake student, the terribly alone scholar. And a- adjectives are sometimes modified by “very much”: very much afraid, very much alone, very much ashamed, etc.

### 3.5 Further Main Body of the Text

#### 3.5.0 Prepositions and Its Types

##### 3.5.1 Prepositions-

- a) The dog sat under the table.
- b) The book is on the table.

In sentence (a) ‘under’ join the words ‘sat’ and ‘the table’ and shows the relationship between them. Also ‘on’ join the words ‘is’ and ‘the table’. Thus, a Preposition is defined as a word that is written before a noun or pronoun, and which shows the relation of the person or thing or quality denoted by that noun or pronoun to something else.



Prepositions: In, out, off, of, up, down, for, at, to, from, by, till, with, within, without, through, above, below, beneath, beside, beyond, between, underneath, across, outside.

Read the following sentences carefully.

- a) Come in
- b) The biscuits are in the jar.

Here in the first sentence, 'in' gives the information about the verb 'come', so it is an adverb. But in the second sentence 'in' join the words 'are' and 'the jar' and it shows the relationship between them and therefore is –

A preposition describes a relationship between other words in a sentence. In itself, a word like "in" or "after" is rather meaningless and hard to define in mere words.

**Notes-** When you do try to define a preposition like "in" or "between" or "on," you invariably use your hands to show how something is situated in relationship to something else.

Prepositions are nearly always combined with other words in structures called preposition phrases. Prepositional phrases can be made up of a million different words, but they tend to be built the same: a preposition followed by a determiner and an adjective or two, followed by a pronoun or noun (called the object of the preposition). This whole phrase, in turn, takes on a modifying role, acting as an adjective or an adverb, locating something in time and space, modifying a noun, or telling when or where or under what conditions something happened. Is it any wonder that prepositions create such troubles for students for whom English is a second language? We say we are at the hospital to visit a friend who is in the hospital. We lie in bed but on the couch. We watch a film at the theatre but on television. For native speakers, these little words present little difficulty, but try to learn another language, any other language, and you will quickly discover that prepositions are troublesome wherever you live and learn.

**3.5.2 Prepositions of Time: at, on, and in**

We use at to designate specific times.

The train is due at 12:15 p.m.

We use on to designate days and dates.

My brother is coming on Monday.

We're having a party on the Fourth of July.

We use in for nonspecific times during a day, a month, a season, or a year.

She likes to jog in the morning.

It's too cold in winter to run outside.

He started the job in 1971.

He's going to quit in August.

**3.5.3 Prepositions of Place: at, on, and in**

We use at for specific addresses.

We use on to designate names of streets, avenues, etc.

Her house is on Tughlaq Road.

And we use in for the names of land-areas (towns, counties, states, countries, and continents).

She lives in Durham.

Durham is in Windham County.

Windham County is in Connecticut.

**3.5.4 Prepositions of Location: in, at, and on and No Preposition**

The bedroom home, the ceiling downstairs, the car, the library, the floor downtown, the class, the office, the horse inside.



\*The library\*, school\*, the plane, outside, school, work, the train upstairs, uptown

\* You may sometimes use different prepositions for these locations. Prepositions of Movement: to and No Preposition like use to, in order to, express movement toward a place. They were driving to work together. She's going to the dentist's office this morning. toward and towards are also helpful prepositions to express movement. These are simply variant spellings of the same word; use whichever sounds better to you. We're moving toward the light. This is a big step towards the project's completion. With the words home, downtown, uptown, inside, outside, downstairs, upstairs, we use no preposition.

Grandma went upstairs

Grandpa went home.

They both went outside.

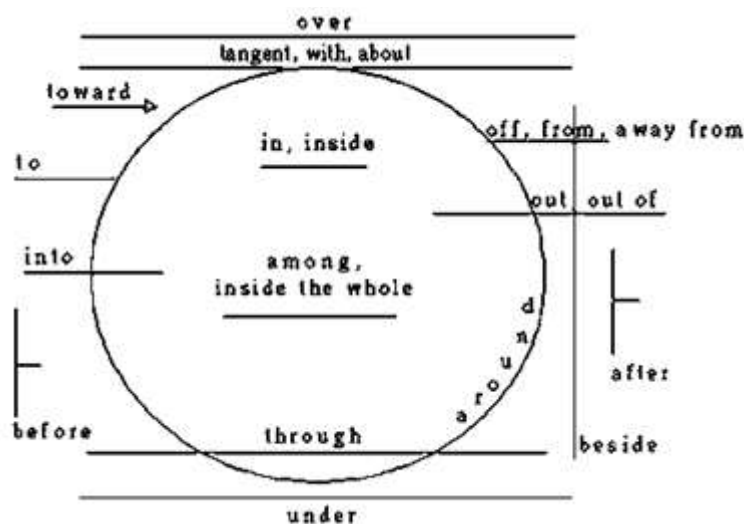
### **3.5.5 Prepositions of Time: for and since**

We use for when we measure time (seconds, minutes, hours, days, months, years).

He held his breath for seven minutes.

She's lived there for seven years.

The British and Irish have been quarrelling for seven centuries.



### 3.6 Prepositions and Its Usage

#### 3.6.1 Prepositions with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs-

Prepositions are sometimes so firmly wedded to other words that they have practically become one word. This occurs in three categories: nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

Summary - Nouns and Prepositions, approval of fondness for need for ,awareness of grasp of participation in, belief in hatred of reason for, concern for hope for respect for confusion about interest in success, in desire for love of understanding of Adjectives and Prepositions, afraid of fond of proud of angry at happy about similar to aware of interested in sorry for capable of jealous of sure of careless about made of tired of familiar with married to worried about Verbs and Prepositions apologize for give up prepare for ask about grow up study for ask for look for talk about belong to look forward to think about bring up look up trust in care for makeup work for C GT.;/A combination of verb and preposition is called a phrasal verb. The word that is joined to the verb is then called a particle. Please refer to the brief section we have



prepared on phrasal verbs for an explanation. Idiomatic Expressions with Prepositions.

- agree to a proposal, with a person, on a price, in principle
- argue about a matter, with a person, for or against a proposition
- compare to to show likenesses, with to show differences (sometimes similarities)
- correspond to a thing, with a person
- differ from an unlike thing, with a person
- live at an address, in a house or city, on a street, with other people

### 3.6.2 Unnecessary Prepositions

In everyday speech, we fall into some bad habits, using prepositions where they are not necessary. It would be a good idea to eliminate these words altogether, but we must be especially careful not to use them in formal, academic prose.

- The book fell off of the desk.
- He threw the book out of the window.
- She wouldn't let the cat inside of the house. [or use "in"]
- Where did they go to?
- Put the lamp in back of the couch. [use "behind" instead]
- Where is your college at?

**Prepositions in Parallel Form** When two words or phrases are used in parallel and require the same preposition to be idiomatically correct, the preposition does not have to be used twice. The female was both attracted by and distracted by the male's dance. Did u know? However, when the idiomatic use of phrases calls for different prepositions, we must be careful not to omit one of them. The children were interested in and disgusted by the movie. It was clear that this player could both



contribute to and learn from every game he played. He was fascinated by and enamored of this beguiling woman.

### **3.6.3 Important Words with Preposition**

abhorrence of

abound with

abounding in

absolve from

abundant with /on

accord with

acquiesce in

acquit of

adapted for (by nature)

adapted to (purpose)

admit of

affinity between

afflict with

agree on (a matter or point)

agree to (a proposal)

agree with (a person, statement, opinion)

aggravate by

alien to

amenable to

angry at / about a thing



angry with a person (or at to stress the anger itself)

associated with

averse to/ from

begin by doing something

begin from a point

begin with an act

benefits of the benefactor

benefits to the beneficiary

bestow upon

bored with or by (not of)

capable of

capacity for

Centre on

change for (a thing)

change with (a person)

chary of

cognizant of

compare to (to show similarities)

compare with (to note points of difference)

compatible with

comply with

under the conditions

confer on (to bestow upon)





confer with  
confide in (trust in)  
confide to (entrust to)  
conform to  
in conformity with  
congratulate on  
connive at  
consequent upon  
content oneself with  
content others by  
contrast (v.) with  
contrast (n.) to or with  
convenient for (purpose)  
convenient to (person)  
conversant with  
correspond to (a thing; resemble)  
correspond with (a person)  
deficient in  
derogatory to  
die for (a cause)  
die of (an illness)  
differ from (be different)  
differ with (disagree)



different from

disappointed of (what we cannot have)

disappointed in (what we have)

dissent from (not to)

distaste for

embark money in

embark on a ship, career

essential to

exception to (a rule, statement)

exempt from

forbid to do

free from or of

glad at (a piece of news)

glad of (a possession)

guiltless of

identical with

impatient of (things)

impatient with (persons)

impervious to

immune from an obligation

immune to a disease

incidental to

inculcate upon some one (not with)



independent of

indicative of

ineligible for

infected with

infested with

inflict upon

influence over/ with (a person)

influence on /upon/ in (persons or things)

infuse into someone

(take the) initiative in

(on one's own) initiative

insensible to

insight into

inspired by

instill into

invest in a business

invest with an office

involve in

irrespective of

join in a game

join with a person or thing

labor at a task

labour for a person, an end



labour in a cause  
labour under disadvantages  
live by labour  
live for riches  
martyr for (a cause)  
martyr to (a disease, etc.)  
at a moment's notice  
on the spur of the moment  
negligent of (noun)  
oblivious of (not to)  
parallel with or to  
part from (persons)  
part with (things)  
perpendicular to  
point at a thing  
point to a fact  
possessed of wealth  
possessed with an idea  
prefer one to the other  
preferable to  
preference for  
prevail against (things)  
prevail upon (persons)



provide (someone) with (something)

profuse in

profusion of

provide against ill luck

provide for an emergency

pursuant to

in pursuance of

recommend that she do (not “recommend her to do”)

reconcile to (thing)

reconcile with (person)

regard as

with reference to

regard for a person

with regard to a subject

relevant to

bring relief to suffering

replace with (but “is replaced by”)

report on or to (not into)

resentful of

responsible for (something)

responsible to (someone)

result from an event

result in a failure



the result of an investigation

find satisfaction in an improvement

the satisfaction of knowing

give satisfaction to a person

satisfied of (fact)

satisfied with (things)

secure against attack

secure from harm

secure in a position

sensitive to

substitute for

suggest that he do (not “suggest him to do”)

susceptible to

taste for (art, etc.)

taste of (food)

thirst for/ after (knowledge)

unconscious of (not to)

at variance on topics

at variance with a person

### **3.7 Check your progress**

**Fill in the blanks using correct Adjective:**

1. Of the two sisters, Susie is the .....

2. Mumbai is ..... from Kochi than Bangalore.

3. She could become an actor or a model – she chose the ..... option.

4. She is still on good terms with her ..... boyfriend.

5. I cannot walk any .....farther/further

(1). The child ran ..... the road.

2. The news from ..... the borders is quite disquieting.

3. I got up early .....the morning.

4. He accused me ..... stealing his money.

5. I am afraid ..... spiders.

6. Do you agree ..... his decision to quit?

### 3.8 Summary

### 3.8 Summary



- Adjectives are words that describe or modify another person or thing in the sentence.
- If a group of words containing a subject and verb acts as an adjective, it is called an Adjective Clause.
- The most common of the so-called a- adjectives are ablaze, afloat, afraid, aghast, alert, alike, alive, alone, aloof, ashamed, asleep, averse, awake, aware.
- A combination of verb and preposition is called a phrasal verb.

### 3.9 Keywords

Articles: A, An, and The are the articles.

Degrees: Used to compare the adjectives.

Comparative: Used for comparing two things.

Superlative: Used for comparing three or more things.

Determiners: Articles and other limiters.

Qualifiers: Find limiter, often regarded as part of the noun.

**A-Adjectives:** The words ablaze, afloat, afraid, aghast, alert, alike, alive, alone, asleep etc.

### 3.10 Self- Assessment Test

#### Fill in the blanks:

1. Adjectives have ..... types of degrees.
2. Biggest is the ..... degree.
3. The word ..... comes after comparative degree.
4. Prepositions describes a ..... between other words in a sentence.





1. Write down all parts of speech and explain.
2. Define adjectives and explain with examples
3. What is preposition and how it is used?

**3.11 Answers: Self -Assessment**

1. three
2. superlative
3. than
4. relationship

**3.12 Answers to check your progress****Adjectives-**

1. Of the two sisters, Susie is the older.
2. Mumbai is farther from Kochi than Bangalore.
3. She was happy when she got the job but two weeks later she was fired.
4. She is still on good terms with her former boyfriend.
5. I cannot walk any farther / further.

**Prepositions-**

1. The child ran across the road.
2. The news from across the borders is quite disquieting.
3. I got up early in the morning.
4. He accused me of stealing his money.
5. I am afraid of spiders.
6. Do you agree with his decision to quit?

**3.13 References/ Readings**

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. Bhatnagar



- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR. G.S. Mansukhani.
- A Background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications
- Online links :
  - [www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html](http://www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html)
  - <http://www.dl.ket.org/latin2/grammar/ch34-degofadj.htm>



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 4</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Modals and Conjunctions</b>	

### Structure of Lesson

#### 4.1 Learning Objectives

#### 4.2 Introduction

#### 4.3 Main Body of the Text

##### 4.3.0 Modals

##### 4.3.1 Modals and Modal Phrases (Semi-Modals)

##### 4.3.2 Ability/Lack of Ability

a. Present and Future: - can/can't + base form of the verb

b. Past: could / couldn't + base form of the verb

##### 4.3.3 Possibility / Impossibility-can / q of the verb

##### 4.3.4 Ask Permission / Give Permission

a. Can + Subject + base form of the verb (informal)

b. Could + subject + base form of the verb (polite)

##### 4.3.5 Make a suggestion – To make a suggestion use:

Could + base form of the verb (informal)

##### 4.3.6 May, Might

Formal Permission / Formal Prohibition



**may / may not + base form of the verb**

**4.3.7 Polite Request**

**May + subject + base form of the verb**

**4.3.8 Polite Suggestion**

**might + base form of the verb**

**4.4 Modal Usage**

**4.4.1 Shall, Should, Ought to,**

**To Offer of Assistance or Polite Suggestion**

**a. (When you are quite sure of a positive answer)**

**Shall + subject + base form of the verb**

**b. (When you are not sure of a positive answer)**

**Should + subject + base form of the verbS**

**4.4.2 To Give Advice**

**should / ought to + base form of the verb**

**4.4.3 Necessity or Requirement**

**Present and Future: -must / have to / need to + base form of the verb**

**4.4.4 must + base form of the verb /To Persuade**

**4.4.5 Lack of Necessity**

**don't / doesn't / didn't + have to + base form of the verb**

**4.4.6 Modals: Will / Would Polite Request or Statement**

**Will / Would + base form of the verb**

**4.4.7 List of modal verbs**



**4.4.8 Use of modal verbs**

**4.5 Further Main Body of the Text**

**4.5.0 Conjunctions and Its Types**

**4.5.1 Conjunctions**

**4.5.2. Conjunctions: Its Types**

**a) Coordinating Conjunctions**

**b) Subordinating Conjunctions**

**4.5.3 Coordinating Conjunctions**

- and, but, or, yet, for, nor, so

**4.5.4 Subordinating clause**

after, before, since—

**4.5.5 Common Subordinating Conjunctions**

**4.6 Usage of Conjunctions**

**4.6.1 Correlative Conjunctions**

**4.6.2 Conjunctive Adverbs**

**4.6.3 Other Conjunctions**

**4.6.4 Omitting That**

**4.7 Check Your Progress**

**4.8 Summary**

**4.9 Keywords**

**4.10 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)**

**4.11 Answers to Check your Progress**

**4.12 References/ Suggested Readings**



#### 4.1 Learning Objectives

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- Use of Modals
- Use of conjunctions
- Write sentences using conjunctions.

**4.2 Introduction.** A modal is a type of auxiliary (helping) verb that is used to express: ability, possibility, permission or obligation. Modal phrases (or semi-modals) are used to express the same things as modals, but are a combination of auxiliary verbs and the preposition to. Coordinating

Conjunctions The simple, little conjunctions are called coordinating conjunctions (you can click on the words to see specific descriptions of each one Coordinating Conjunctions• and, but, or, yet, for, nor, so

(It may help you remember these conjunctions by recalling that they all have fewer than four letters. Also, remember the acronym FANBOYS: For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So. Be careful of the words then and now; neither is a coordinating conjunction, so what we say about coordinating conjunctions' roles in a sentence and punctuation does not apply to those two words). When a coordinating conjunction connects two independent clauses, it is often (but not always) accompanied by a comma:

#### 4.3 Main Body of the Text

##### 4.3.0 Modals

##### 4.3.1 Modals and Modal Phrases (Semi-Modals)

A modal is a type of auxiliary (helping) verb that is used to express: ability, possibility, permission or obligation. Modal phrases (or semi-modals) are used to express the same things as modals, but are a combination of auxiliary verbs and the preposition to. The modals and semi-modals in English are:

##### Can/could/be able to



**May/might**

**Shall/should**

**Must/have to**

**Will/would**

**Can, Could, Be Able To**

**Can, could and be able to** are used to express a variety of ideas in English:

Modal verbs are used to express functions such as, Permission, Ability, Obligation, Prohibition, Lack of necessity, Advice, Possibility, Probability.

#### **4.3.2 Ability/ Lack of Ability**

##### **a. Present and Future: - can/can't + base form of the verb**

Tom can write poetry very well.

I can help you with that next week.

Lisa can't speak French.

**am / is / are / will be + able to + base form of the verb**

**am not/ isn't / aren't/ won't be + able to + base form of the verb**

##### **b. Past: could / couldn't + base form of the verb**

When I was a child, I could climb trees.

was / were + able to + base form of the verb

wasn't / weren't + able to + base form of the verb

hasn't / haven't + been able to + base form of the verb

I wasn't able to visit her in the hospital.

He hasn't been able to get in touch with the client yet.



**Note: Can and could do not take an infinitive (to verb) and do not take the future auxiliary will.**

Correct: I can help you this afternoon.

Correct: I will (I'll) be able to help you this afternoon.

#### **4.3.3 Possibility / Impossibility-can / can't + base form of the verb**

You can catch that train at 10:43.

He can't see you right now. He's in surgery.

#### **could + base form of the verb**

I could fly via Amsterdam if I leave the day before.

#### **4.3.4 Ask Permission / Give Permission**

##### **a. Can + Subject + base form of the verb (informal)**

Can you lend me ten dollars?

Can + base form of the verb (informal)

You can borrow my car.

##### **b. Could + subject + base form of the verb (polite)**

Could I have your number?

Could I talk to your supervisor please?

#### **4.3.5 Make a suggestion – To make a suggestion use:**

##### **Could + base form of the verb (informal)**

You could take the tour of the castle tomorrow.

#### **Exercises: Can, Could, Be able to**

**Fill in the correct form of can, could or be able to as in the examples.**

Berlin could not help his little brother with his homework yesterday.





Can I call you later tonight?

\_\_\_\_\_ Tony run long distances when he was a boy?

\_\_\_\_\_ you please call a tow truck for me? My car broke down. (polite)

The students \_\_\_\_\_ to buy their textbooks today. The bookstore is all out of them.

**Answers:**

Could, aren't able, Can,

**4.3.6. May, Might**

**Formal Permission / Formal Prohibition**

**may / may not + base form of the verb**

You may start your exam now.

You may not wear sandals to work.

**4.3.7 Polite Request**

**May I help you?**

**Possibility / Negative Possibility**

**may/ might + base form of the verb**

We may go out for dinner tonight. Do you want to join us?

Our company might get the order if the client agrees to the price.

may not / might not + base form of the verb

Adam and Sue may not buy that house. It's very expensive.

They might not buy a house at all.

To Make a Suggestion (when there is no better alternative)

may as well / might as well + base form of the verb

You may as well come inside. John will be home soon.



We might as well take Friday off. There's no work to be done anyway.

#### 4.3.8 Polite Suggestion

##### **might + base form of the verb**

Fill in the correct form of may or might as in the example.

May I sit here?

They \_\_\_\_\_ finish the project on time. The main engineer is ill.

You \_\_\_\_\_ want to stop by the museum gift shop on your way out.

**Answers:** might not, might.

#### 4.4 Modal Usage

##### 4.4.1 Shall, Should, Ought to

##### **To Offer of Assistance or Polite Suggestion**

##### **a. (When you are quite sure of a positive answer)**

##### **Shall + subject + base form of the verb**

Shall we go for a walk?

Note: Shall is only used with I or we. It is used instead of will only in formal English.

##### **b. (When you are not sure of a positive answer)**

##### **Should + subject + base form of the verb**

Should I call a doctor?

A Prediction or Expectation that Something Will Happen

should/shouldn't + base form of the verb

The proposal should be finished on time. I shouldn't be late. The train usually arrives on time.

##### 4.4.2. To Give Advice

**should / ought to + base form of the verb**

You should check that document before you send it out.

You ought to have your car serviced before the winter.

To Give Advice (about something you think wrong or unacceptable)

shouldn't + base form of the verb

James shouldn't teach him words like those.

Exercises: Should, Shouldn't, Ought To

**Fill in should, shouldn't or ought in the following sentences as in the example.**

He shouldn't encourage such bad behaviour.

You \_\_\_\_\_ get your teeth cleaned at least once a year.

The house \_\_\_\_\_ be ready to move into by next month. It's almost finished.

**Answers: Should, ought to**

**4.4.3 Necessity or Requirement****Present and Future: -must / have to / need to + base form of the verb**

You must have a passport to cross the border.

Elisabeth has to apply for her visa by March 10th.

I need to drop by his room to pick up a book.

**Past: -had to / needed to + base form of the verb**

I had to work late last night.

I needed to drink a few cups of coffee in order to stay awake.

Note: have to and need to are often used in the same context, but many times, need to is used to express something that is less urgent, something in which you have a choice. Almost 100% Certain



#### 4.4.4 must + base form of the verb -Thomas has lived in Paris for years. His French must be very good.

##### To Persuade

must / have to + base form of the verb

You must try this wine. It's excellent.

You have to visit us while you're in town.

Prohibited or Forbidden

must not / mustn't + base form of the verb

You must not drive over the speed limit.

You mustn't leave medicines where children can get to them.

#### 4.4.5 Lack of Necessity

##### don't / doesn't / didn't + have to + base form of the verb

You don't have to park the car. The hotel valet will do it for you.

Tim doesn't have to go to school today. It's a holiday.

You didn't have to shout. Everyone could hear you.

needn't + base form of the verb

You needn't worry about me. I'll be fine.

##### Exercises: Must, have to, need to, Don't Have to, Needn't

##### Fill in the blanks with one of these Modals:

must, must not, have to, has to, don't have to, doesn't have to, needn't as in the examples.

There may be more than one correct answer.

Shira doesn't have to drive to the airport. She's going by taxi.



You must speak politely to the customers.

**will / won't + base form of the verb**

John will pick you up at 7:00am.

Beth won't be happy with the results of the exam.

**4.4.6 Modals: Will / Would Polite Request or Statement**

**Will / Would + base form of the verb**

Will you please take the trash out?

Would you mind if I sat here?

I'd (I would) like to sign up for your workshop.

Habitual Past Action

**Would/Wouldn't + base form of the verb** -When I was a child, I would spend hours playing with my train set. Peter wouldn't eat broccoli when he was a kid. He loves it now.

**Exercises: will, would**

**Fill in the blanks with one of the following words: will, won't, would, wouldn't.**

Will you please help me lift this box?

I \_\_\_\_\_ like to order the onion soup please.

The manager \_\_\_\_\_ be pleased to hear that a customer slipped on the wet floor.

Answers: Would, won't

**Here are some characteristics of modal verbs:** They never change their form. You can't add "s", "ed", "Ing"...They are always followed by an infinitive without "to" (. the bare infinitive.) They are used to indicate modality allow speakers to express certainty, possibility, willingness, obligation, necessity, ability



**4.4.7 List of modal verbs** - Here is a list of modal verbs: can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, The verbs or expressions dare, ought to, had better, and need not, behave like modal auxiliaries to a large extent and may be added to the above list.

#### 4.4.8 Use of modal verbs

Here is a list of modals with examples:

Modal Verb	Expressing	Example
Must	Strong obligation	You must stop when the traffic lights turn red.
	Logical conclusion / Certainty	He must be very tired. He's been working all day long.
Must not	Prohibition	You must not smoke in the hospital.
Can	Ability	I can swim.
	Permission	Can I use your phone please?
	Possibility	Smoking can cause cancer.
Could	Ability in the past	When I was younger, I could run fast.
	Polite Permission	Excuse me, could I just say something?
	Possibility	It could rain tomorrow!
May	Permission	May I use your phone please?
	Possibility/ Probability	It may rain tomorrow!
Might	Polite Permission	Might I suggest an idea?
	Possibility/ Probability	I might go on holiday to Australia next year.



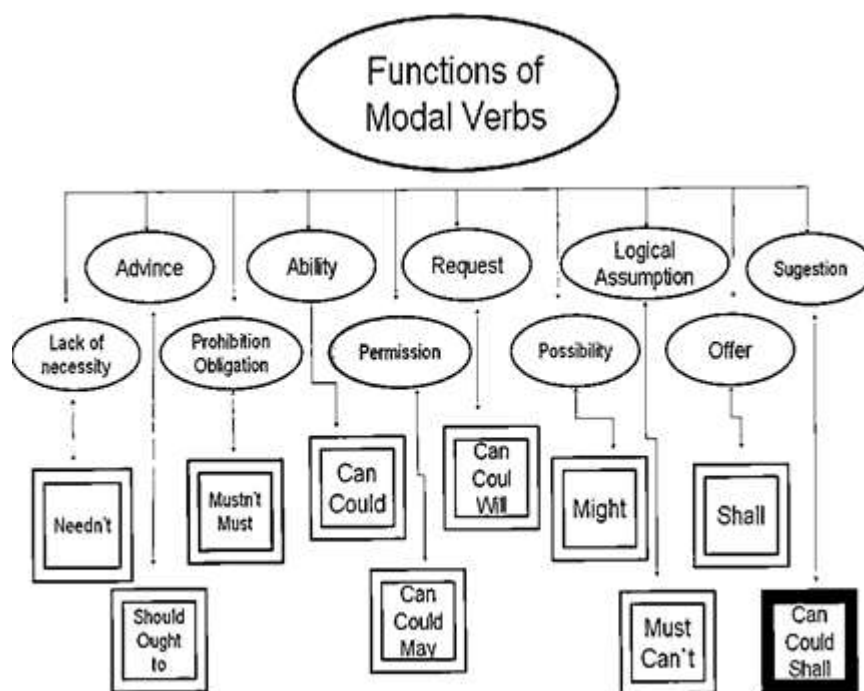
Need Not	Lack Necessity/Absence Obligation	of I need not buy tomatoes. There are of plenty of tomatoes in the fridge.
Should/Ought to	50 % Obligation  Advice  Logical Conclusion	I should / ought to see a doctor. I have a terrible headache.  You should / ought to revise your lessons  He should / ought to be very tired. He's been working all day long.
Had Better	Advice	You 'd better revise your lessons

**Note- Modal verbs are followed by an infinitive without "to", also called the bare infinitive.**

**Examples:**

You must stop when the traffic lights turn red.

You should see to the doctor.



## 4.5 Further Main Body of the Text

### 4.5.0 Conjunctions and Its Types

#### 4.5.1 Conjunctions

Some words are satisfied spending an evening at home, alone, eating ice-cream right out of the box, watching Seinfeld re-runs on TV, or reading a good book. Others aren't happy unless they're out on the town, mixing it up with other words; they're joiners and they just can't help themselves. A conjunction is a joiner, a word that connects (conjoins) parts of a sentence. In sentence a), 'and' join the two words. In sentence b), 'but' join the two sentences. Thus, Conjunction is a word which merely joins together two sentences or two words. Conjunctions: and, or, if, that, but, where, or, also, still, since, only, after, before, because, as, neither, nor, either, or, not only, but also





#### 4.5.2. Conjunction: Its Type

##### a) Coordinating Conjunctions

##### b) Subordinating Conjunctions

**Read the following sentences carefully.**

i) I waited on the station but the train did not arrive.

ii) Since you asked, I am going to tell you the story.

Here in the first sentence, 'I waited on the station' and 'the train did not arrive' are two independent clauses; joined by the conjunction 'but'. They can stand as the sentences of complete meaning if separated, by removing the joining conjunction. They are called main/ principal clauses. Thus, conjunctions which join together the two or more independent clauses are called

**4.5.3 Coordinating Conjunctions.** The simple, little conjunctions are called coordinating conjunctions (you can click on the words to see specific descriptions of each one): In the second sentence, 'since' is conjunction and 'since you asked 'and 'I am going to tell you the story.' are the two clauses. Second clause can stand on its own as an independent sentence and it is the main clause. However, the first clause depends on the second clause for its complete meaning.

#### **Coordinating Conjunctions**

• **and, but, or, yet, for, nor, so**

(It may help you remember these conjunctions by recalling that they all have fewer than four

letters. Also, remember the acronym FANBOYS: For-And-Nor-But-Or-Yet-So. Be careful of



the words then and now; neither is a coordinating conjunction, so what we say about coordinating conjunctions' roles in a sentence and punctuation does not apply to those two words).

When a coordinating conjunction connects two independent clauses, it is often (but not always)

accompanied by a comma:

- Ulysses wants to play for UConn, but he has had trouble meeting the academic requirements.

When the two independent clauses connected by a coordinating conjunction are nicely balanced or brief, many writers will omit the comma:

- Ulysses has a great jump shot but he isn't quick on his feet.

The comma is always correct when used to separate two independent clauses connected by a

coordinating conjunction.

A comma is also correct when and is used to attach the last item of a serial list, although many

writers (especially in newspapers) will omit that final comma:

- Ulysses spent his summer studying basic math, writing, and reading comprehension.

When a coordinating conjunction is used to connect all the elements in a series, a comma is

not used:

- Presbyterians and Methodists and Baptists are the prevalent Protestant congregations in Oklahoma.



A comma is also used with but when expressing a contrast:

**AND**

(a) To suggest that one idea is chronologically sequential to another: Tashonda sent in her applications and waited by the phone for a response.”

(b) To suggest that one idea is the result of another: “Willie heard the weather report and promptly boarded up his house.”

(c) To suggest that one idea is in contrast to another (frequently replaced by but in this usage): “Juanita is brilliant and Shalimar has a pleasant personality.

(d) To suggest an element of surprise (sometimes replaced by yet in this usage): “Hartford is a rich city and suffers from many symptoms of urban blight.”

(e) To suggest that one clause is dependent upon another, conditionally (usually the first clause is an imperative): “Use your credit cards frequently and you’ll soon find yourself deep in debt.” (f) To suggest a kind of “comment” on the first clause: “Charlie became addicted to gambling — and that surprised no one who knew him.”

**BUT**

(a) To suggest a contrast that is unexpected in light of the first clause: “Joey lost a fortune in the stock market, but he still seems able to live quite comfortably.”

(b) To suggest in an affirmative sense what the first part of the sentence implied in a negative way (sometimes replaced by on the contrary): “The club never invested foolishly, but used the services of a sage investment counsellor.”

(c) To connect two ideas with the meaning of “with the exception of” (and then the second word takes over as subject): “Everybody but Golden breath is trying out for the team.”

**OR**

(a) To suggest that only one possibility can be realized, excluding one or the other: “You can study hard for this exam or you can fail.”



- (b) To suggest the inclusive combination of alternatives: "We can broil chicken on the grill tonight, or we can just eat leftovers."
- (c) To suggest a refinement of the first clause: "Smith College is the premier all-women's college in the country, or so it seems to most Smith College alumnae."
- (d) To suggest a restatement or "correction" of the first part of the sentence: "There are no rattlesnakes in this canyon, or so our guide tells us."
- (e) To suggest a negative condition: "The New Hampshire state motto is the rather grim "Live free or die."
- (f) To suggest a negative alternative without the use of an imperative
- (g) "They must approve his political style or they wouldn't keep electing him mayor."

#### 4.5.4 Subordinating clause.

subordinating conjunction and the clause 'since you asked' is, Thus, conjunctions which join one or more dependent or subordinate clauses to the independent or main clause are called subordinating conjunctions.

1. The sentence in which two or more principal or main clauses are joined together by the coordinating conjunctions is called Compound sentence.

ii) The sentence in which one or more subordinate clauses are joined to the principal or main clause, by the subordinating conjunctions, is called Complex sentence.

iii) The sentence made of only one clause, one subject and one predicate with one verb, is called simple sentence. Notice that some of the subordinating conjunctions in the table below—4 are also prepositions, but as subordinators they are being used to introduce a clause and to

subordinate the following clause to the independent element in the sentence.

as though rather than whenever

because since where



before so that whereas

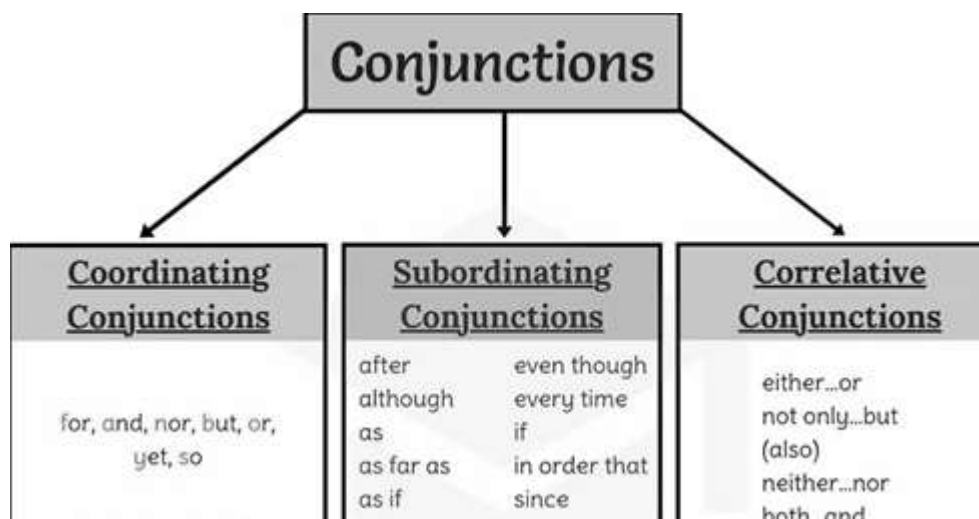
even if than wherever

even though that while

#### 4.5.5 Common Subordinating Conjunctions

Strictly speaking, the word like is a preposition, not a conjunction. It can, therefore, be

used to introduce a prepositional phrase ("My brother is tall like my father"), but it should not be used to introduce a clause ("My brother can't play the piano as he did before the accident" or "It looks like as if basketball is quickly overtaking baseball as America's national sport.").



#### 4.6 Usage of Conjunctions

##### 4.6.1 Correlative Conjunctions:

Some conjunctions combine with other words to form what are called correlative conjunctions. They always travel in pairs, joining various sentence elements that should be treated as grammatically equal.



- She led the team not only in statistics but also by virtue of her enthusiasm.
- Polonius said, “Neither a borrower nor a lender be.”
- Whether you win this race or lose it doesn’t matter as long as you do your best.

**Correlative conjunctions sometimes create problems in parallel form.**

both . . . and neither . . . nor

not only . . . but also whether . . . or

not . . . but as . . . as

either . . . or

**4.6.2 Conjunctive Adverbs**

The conjunctive adverbs such as however, moreover, nevertheless, consequently, as a result are used to create complex relationships between ideas.

**4.6.3 Other Conjunctions**

The conjunction NOR is not extinct, but it is not used nearly as often as the other conjunctions, so it might feel a bit odd when nor does come up in conversation or writing. Its most common use is as the little brother in the correlative pair, neither-nor.

- He is neither sane nor brilliant.
- That is neither what I said nor what I meant. It can be used with other negative expressions:
  - That is not what I meant to say, nor should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt. It is possible to use nor without a preceding negative element, but it is unusual and, to an extent, rather stuffy: Be careful of the conjunction SO. Sometimes it can connect two independent clauses along with a comma, but sometimes it can’t. For instance, in this sentence,



• Soto is not the only Olympic athlete in his family, so are his brother, sister, and his Uncle Chet. where the word so means “as well” or “in addition,” most careful writers would use a semicolon between the two independent clauses. In the following sentence, where so is acting like a minor-league “therefore,” the conjunction and the comma are adequate to the task:

• Soto has always been nervous in large gatherings, so it is no surprise that he avoids crowds of his adoring fans.

#### 4.6.4 Omitting That

The word that is used as a conjunction to connect a subordinate clause to a preceding

verb. In this construction that is sometimes called the “expletive that.” Indeed, the word is

often omitted to good effect, but the very fact of easy omission causes some editors to take

out the red pen and strike out the conjunction that wherever it appears. In the following

sentences, we can happily omit the that (or keep it, depending on how the sentence sounds to us):

- Isabel knew [that] she was about to be fired.
- She definitely felt [that] her fellow employees hadn’t supported her.
- I hope [that] she doesn’t blame me.

#### 4.7 Check your progress-

**Fill in the blanks using appropriate modal and conjunction**

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ like to order the onion soup please.

4. The manager \_\_\_\_\_ be pleased to hear that a customer slipped on the wet floor.



5. \_\_\_\_\_ it be okay if I slept here tonight?
6. If you are sick, you \_\_\_\_\_ go to work. You'll infect everyone there.
7. Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ stop at red lights.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ finish the proposal today. You can finish it tomorrow.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ hear much better with her new hearing aids.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I order us a bottle of wine?
11. This is the place \_\_\_\_\_ we stayed last time we visited. (where, when, how)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you win first place, you will receive a prize. (wherever, if, unless)
13. You won't pass the test \_\_\_\_\_ you study. (when, if, unless)
14. Calculus is \_\_\_\_\_ easy \_\_\_\_\_ difficult \_\_\_\_\_ (not / but, both / and, either / or)
15. It's \_\_\_\_\_ going to rain \_\_\_\_\_ snow tonight. (as / if, either / or, as / as)

#### 4.8 Summary

- Some words are satisfied spending an evening at home, alone, eating ice-cream right out of the box, watching Seinfeld re-runs on TV, or reading a good book. Others aren't happy unless they're out on the town, mixing it up with other words; they're joiners and they just can't help themselves. A conjunction is a joiner, a word that connects (conjoins) parts of a sentence.

- Some conjunctions combine with other words to form what are called correlative conjunctions.

- The conjunctive adverbs such as however, moreover, nevertheless, consequently, as a result are used to create complex relationships between ideas.

Modal verbs are used to express functions such as: Permission, Ability, Obligation, Prohibition, Lack of necessity, Advice, possibility, probability.

#### 4.9 Keywords





**Conjunction:** A word that connects parts of a sentence.

**Yet:** It is coordinating conjunction.

**Modal verbs:** are followed by an infinitive without "to", also called the bare infinitive

#### 4.10 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQs)

**State whether the following statements are true or false:**

1. When we use modals in sentences.
2. Write down 10 modals.
3. Write down 10 conjunctions and use it in sentence

#### 4.11 Answers to Check your Progress-

3. Would 4. won't 5. would 6. shouldn't 7. must 8. don't have to 9. can 10 – where, 11 – if, 12 unless 13. not / but, 14– either / or, 15 – neither / nor

#### 4.12 References/ Suggested Readings

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. Bhatnagar
- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR. G.S. Mansukhani.
- A Background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications
- Online links:
  - [www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html](http://www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html)
  - <http://www.dl.ket.org/latin2/grammar/ch34-degofadj.htm>



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 5</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Tenses and Active and Passive voice</b>	

## Structure of Lesson

### 5.1 Learning Objectives

### 5.2 Introduction

### 5.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 5.3.0 Tense and Its Types

##### 5.3.1 Tense

##### 5.3.2 Types of Tenses

- a. Present Tense
- b. Past Tense
- c. Future Tense

##### 5.3.3 Present Tense

- a. Simple present Tense.
- b. Present Continuous Tense.
- c. Present Perfect Tense.
- d. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

##### 5.3.4 Past Tense

- a. Past Indefinite Tense/ Simple Past
- b. Past Continuous Tense:

**c. Past Perfect Tense****d. Past Perfect Continuous Tense:****5.3.5 Future Tense****a. Simple future / Future Indefinite Tense****b. Future Continuous Tense****c. Future Perfect Tense****d. Future Perfect Continuous Tense****5.4 Further Main Body of the Text****5.4.0 Voice- Active and Passive****5.4.1 Active Voice and Passive Voice****5.4.2 Difference between Active Voice and Passive Voice:****5.4.3 General Rules to change the Voice:****5.4.4 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs:****5.5 Check Your Progress****5.6 Summary****5.7 Keywords****5.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)****5.9 Answers to check your progress****5.10 References/ Suggested Readings****5.1 Learning Objectives:**

The objectives of this chapter are: Students will be able to recognize the past, present and future tenses of regular and irregular verbs. In this lesson we shall study about



Active Voice and Passive Voice. We will also study general rules of changing the verbs from Active voice to Passive voice and vice versa. Students will understand that verbs change form depending on their relationship to time the objectives of this lesson are:

1. To give an introduction to Voice in Language.
2. To learn about Transitive Verbs and Intransitive Verbs.
3. To make students aware of general rules of changing the Verbs in Active and Passive Voice.

## 5.2 Introduction:

In English grammar, verbs are often used in a way that it indicates or denotes the time when an event occurred. These verbs that take up different forms to indicate the time of an action, event or condition by changing its form are called as Tenses. The word “tense” means “time”. It is used in relation to a verb. It tells us about an action which occurs or about the state of a thing which exists. “Tense is the form of a verb which shows the time of an action and its degree of completeness.” Along with the knowledge of correct grammar, it is important to know its correct practical use. In this part, you will study sentences in larger context for social as well as academic purposes. You will learn to construct and synthesize the sentences. You have learned earlier that the verb denotes action. The action may be happening in the present time or it may have happened in the past time or it may happen in the future. Thus, depending upon the time of the action or state there are three tenses of the verbs.

- a) Present Tense:** In this tense the verb shows that the action is in the present time
- b) Past tense:** In this tense the verb indicates that the action has happened in the past.

**c) Future tense:** In this tense the verb indicates that the action will happen in the future. Depending upon the completeness or incompleteness of the action each tense is further divided into four types.

i) Simple: In this the action is simply mentioned.

ii) Continuous: In this the action is incomplete and ongoing.

iii) Perfect: In this the action completes.

iv) Perfect Continuous: In this the action is ongoing at the time

of reporting the speech. Voice is that property of the Verb which shows whether the subject is performing or experiencing the action. We have two types of Voice:

(a) Active Voice      (b) Passive Voice.

Active Voice describes a sentence where the subject performs the action stated by the verb. Whereas in Passive Voice sentences, the subject is acted upon by the verb.

An action of a subject, in relation to an object, is expressed in two ways. These two ways expressing action of a subject are known as voice i.e. Active Voice and Passive Voice. Let us try to understand it with the help of some examples:

Ram kills a snake. (Active Voice)

A snake is killed by Rama. (Passive Voice)

### 5.3 Main Body of the Text

### 5.3.0 Tense and Its Types

### 5.3.1 Tense:

**Tense means time.** The content of this lesson shall be presented as below

- Tenses
- Types of Tenses
- Present Tense



- Use of Present tenses
- Exercises for practice

### 5.3.2 Types of Tenses:

There are three types of Tenses i.e.

- a. The Present Tense,
- b. The Past Tense and
- c. The Future Tense

Depending upon the present, past or future event. With each of these tenses, there are four aspects associated with it. An aspect here refers to the nature of action performed by the verb. Each of these three tenses has further four forms:

1. Indefinite or Simple
2. Continuous or Progressive
3. Perfect
4. Perfect Continuous

The students must also know about the forms of the verbs before they are told about tenses in detail. There are three form of the verb.

1. Present or the first form
2. Past or the second form
3. Past Participle or the third form for e.g.

Go      Went      Gone

Called   Called      Called

There is another form also known as present participle form which is formed by adding “Ing” to the first form of the verb. e.g.:

Smile + Ing      = Smiling



Go + Ing = Going

Play +Ing = Playing

Now, let us study the use of Tenses in detail.

### 5.3.3 Present Tense

This tense is used to refer or indicate to something that occurs in the present. It is of four types:

- a. Simple present Tense.
- b. Present Continuous Tense.
- c. Present Perfect Tense.
- d. Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

#### a. Simple Present Tense:

The simple present or indefinite present tense is used to describe an action, event or condition that is occurring in the present while being spoken about or written for e.g.

The boys play.

Cows eat grass.

The present indefinite tense is formed with the first form of the verb i.e.

Sub + First form of the verb

Sentence	Subject: I, We, You, They	He, She, It, Noun (Singular)
	Noun (Plural)	
Sentence	1st form of Verb	1st form + s/es
Negative	do not + 1st form	does not + 1st form
Interrogative	do+Subject+1st form+?	Does + Subject+ 1st form...?

**Use of Simple Present Tense:**

The simple present tense is used to express:

**(a) Habitual action e.g.**

- i) The School starts at 8 a.m.
- ii) Mohan goes to office every day at 9 a.m.

**(b) The Simple present tense is used to describe universal truth, scientific facts and what is always stated as true e.g.**

- i) The earth moves round the sun.
- ii) Water boils at 100degree C.

**(c) Planned future action which must happen in the near future, e.g.**

- 1) Our examination begins tomorrow.
- 2) We leave Delhi at 9 a.m. on Monday.

**(d) It is also used in newspaper headlines. e.g.**

- 1. PM congratulates victorious Indian Team.

**(e) The simple present is also used to describe processes, to give instructions or to give running commentary. e.g.**

- 1. Sachin hits the six.

**(f) Conditional sentences when they refer to some future action, e.g.**

- 1) If you work hard, you will pass.
- 2) Unless you run fast, you will miss the train.

**(g) Adverbs and adverbial phrases like usually, frequently, occasionally, often, seldom, sometimes, generally, rarely, daily, everyday etc. e.g.**

- 1) I go to my friend's house every week.





- 2) Mohan seldom goes to play cricket.

### EXERCISE – I

Rewrite the following sentences into their negative and interrogative forms:

- a) I come to school by bus.
- b) Mohit studies every day.
- c) My sister lives in Mumbai.
- d) Radha is a singer.

**Use Simple Present tense in the following sentences:**

- 1) My sister..... (receive) the letter daily.
- 2) Mohan always..... (speak) the truth.
- 3) Most trains ..... (not run) on time.
- 4) If it ..... (rain), we will not play the match.
- 5) If you..... (go) to Delhi, tell him to ring me.

### b. Present Continuous Tense

) Present continuous tense is used to denote an action which is going on at the time of speaking. Look at the following examples:

He is playing the piano.

She is dancing on the stage.

These sentences show that the actions are in progress at the present moment. In other words, we can say that Present Continuous tense is used for the action which is happening simultaneously at the time of action. This tense is also used with words like now, still, today, while, at the present moment, when they refer to the action in progress. Look at the following table:

Affirmative sentences	is/am/are + 1st form + Ing
-----------------------	----------------------------



Negative sentences                      is not / am not / are not + 1st form + Ing

Interrogative sentences is/am/are + subject... And question mark in the end.

For e.g. I am singing a song now.

I am not singing a song now.

Am I singing a song now?

Am I not singing a song now?

### Use of Present Continuous tense:

□ It is used to describe definite and immediate future action. For example

- I am going to Delhi tonight.

- We are attending the party tonight.

□ It is used to say that we are in the middle of an action. For example

- I am waiting for the bus.

- The wind is blowing.

□ It is also used when we are in the middle of something, but not necessarily/actually at the moment of speaking. For example.

- He is reading a novel these days.

- We are working on a new project.

**Note: There are number of verbs which are not normally used in the present continuous tense. These are: Verbs of perception: See, taste, smell, notice, etc.**

**Verbs used to express feelings or states of mind: love, want, desire, wish, refuse, forgive, care, hate, adore, like, dislike admire etc.**

### Incorrect

### Correct

These grapes are tasting sour.

These grapes taste sour.

I am thinking you are wrong.

I think you are wrong.

**EXERCISE 1**

Change the following into the Present Continuous tense: -

- a) The airplanes fly in the sky.
- b) The doctor examines the patient.
- c) The gardener waters the plants.
- d) Mohan swims in the tank at this time.

**EXERCISE 2**

Fill in the blanks with Present Continuous tense:

- a) Rita ..... (comb) her hair.
- b) You can't see him, he ..... (sleep) at the moment.
- c) The train ..... the platform. (leave)
- d) The washing ..... on the line. (hang)

**C. Present Perfect Tense**

Present Perfect Tense is used in the sentences which began its action in the past but it will be completed in the present. Present perfect Tense is used to express a recently completed action which can be denoted by words like first now, already, yet, recently, lately e.g.

Study the following table:

Affirmative sentences                      Has/Have + 3rd form

Negative sentences                      Has not + Have not + 3rd

Interrogative sentences      Has/Have before subject and Question mark in the end.

For e.g.      I have done my work.

I have not done my work.



Have I done my work?

Have I not done my work?

**Note:** Special care is to be taken in case of sentences where past time like yesterday, last week, last month, last year, ago, etc. are mentioned. You are required to use here Past Indefinite Tense and not Present Perfect Tense.

### USES OF PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The present perfect Tense is used to show that an action done in the past has an effect or relevance at the present time.

For example –

- 1) Seema, are you still reading the book?
- 2) He has read The Discovery of India. (So, he knows the story)
  - To talk about activities completed in the immediate past:
    - 1) I have just heard the news.
    - 2) She has just gone out.
  - To indicate actions where the time of the action is not given (but is not indefinite)
    - 1) Suman has gone to Amritsar.
    - 2) Have you seen him walking by?

### Exercise – I

**Use the Present Perfect tense:**

- a) The cat ..... (steal) the fish.
- b) You ..... (see) him lately.
- c) His flight ..... (take off) already.
- d) I ..... (know) him to be a serious man.

**Exercise – 2****Use the Present Perfect Tense:**

- a) I just..... (wash) that floor.
- b) The movie..... (be) released recently.
- c) The film ..... just (begin)
- d) My brother ..... (not pay) the telephone bill yet.

**d. Present Perfect Continuous Tense**

The Present perfect Progressive (continuous) tense is a combination of the Present Perfect and the Present Progressive tenses, in form / has / have + been + V1 + Ing) as well as in meaning.

In Present Perfect Continuous tense, the action began sometime in the past but it is still continuing in the present.

Affirmative sentences                      Has been / Have been + 1st form + Ing

Negative sentences                      Has not been / Have not been + 1st form + Ing.

Interrogative sentences                      Has/Have+ Subject + been.?

Look at the following sentences –

You have been playing.

You have not been playing.

Have you been playing?

It should be noted that you are supposed to use for and since before the given time. For is to be used to express the period of time i.e. for five years, for three days, for four hours, etc. Since is to be used to express the point of time i.e. since 2014, since March, since 5'O clock, since Wednesday etc.



Special care is to be taken in sentences where time factor is not given and you should use Present Continuous Tense. If the number of times is mentioned, you are required to use Present Perfect Tense.

### Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the Present Perfect Continuous tense:

- 1) My brother is a writer. He..... (write) novels for 5 years.
- 2) He..... (fly) kites since morning.
- 3) Harshit..... (not keep) good health for three days.
- 4) We .....(live) here since 2001.
- 5) ..... she .....(knit) her sweater for two hours.

### 5.3.4 Past Tense:

The Past tense is a grammatical tense whose principal function is to place an action or situation in past time. Past tense in English has two semantic features: -

- The speaker conceptualizes the event as having occurred at some specific time in the past.
- The event is presented as wholly located in the past, in a time frame that is separated from the present. James Joyce was born in Dublin 1882. He lived in Ireland until 1904 and spent rest of his life abroad. Here “was born” is interpreted referring to a point of time, while “lived” and “spent” are interpreted as being of longer duration.

#### a. Past Indefinite Tense/ Simple Past:

The Simple past is used to say that an event occurred or that something was the case at a particular time in the past.

Mohan ran a thorn into his foot yesterday.

You lived in my neighbourhood last year.

**Uses Of Simple Past**

1. If we want to say that a situation existed over a period of time in the past, we use the simple past-M.F. Hussain lived abroad in his last year.

2. When we talk about an activity that took place regularly or repeatedly in the past, but which no longer occurs, we use simple past.

-When my grandmother was alive, she fed sparrows early in the morning every day. used to is also used to express such situations. However, unlike 'would', 'used to' can also describe past states and situations. 'Used to' is not common in negative situations.

I'm not quite as healthy as I used to be.

1. When we talk of something that happened in the past, and we mention a situation existed at that time, we use the simple past. All the streets in this part of old Delhi look alike. Study the table: -

Affirmative	2nd form of the verb.
Negative	did not + 1st form of the verb.
Interrogative	Did – Subject + 1st form....?

**For e.g.**

He played cricket. Did he play cricket?

He did not play cricket. Did he not play cricket?

**Exercise - 1****Complete the sentences using simple past tense: ---**

- 1) She..... (call) me last night.
- 2) Columbus ..... (discover) America.
- 3) Last year it ..... (not rain) heavily.



- 4) Gopal ... (not attend) the office yesterday.  
5) My health has improved since I..... (go) to Nainital.

**Exercise – 2**

**Change the following sentences into negative and Interrogative sentences: -**

- 1) Your father hates the poor.  
2) I know his name.  
3) He came to see me.  
4) The thieves broke into his house.  
5) He played tennis.

**b. Past Continuous Tense:**

The Past Continuous Tense is often used to denote an action which continued for some time in the past. The most common use of the past continuous/progressive is to talk about what was already happening at a particular past moment.

When I got up this morning, it was raining.

Affirmative	was / were + 1st form + Ing
Negative	was not / were not + 1st form + Ing
Interrogative	was / were + subject...?

**Uses of Past Continuous Tense**

1. Past Continuous tense is used in the sentences where we have adverbs like continually, constantly, forever etc.

The patient was continually asking for help.

2. Past continuous tense is used for temporary actions and situations. When we talk about longer, more permanent situations, we usually use the simple past:

I was running downstairs when I slipped and fell.







Had he not finished his work before I went out?

Usually this tense is used in simple sentences where words like till, before, already, since etc. come.

### **Uses of Past Perfect Tense**

1. It is commonly used in 'reported speech' after past verbs like said, told asked, explained, thought, wondered, etc.

I thought I had sent the cheque a week before.

2. We make use of past perfect tense and past indefinite tense in two clauses of a sentence when there are two actions taking place, one of which happens before the other. E.g. The bell had already rung before I reached the college.

3. Past perfect is also used in conditional sentences for e.g. If you had worked hard, you would have passed.

4. It is also used to express unfulfilled desire of the past. e.g. I wish I had gone there.

The Past Perfect can be used with 'till' / 'until' and 'before' to emphasize the completion or expected completion of an action. He refused to go till he had seen all the details of the case.

### **Exercise**

1. He .... (not revise) his courses till then.

2. He ..... (take) his breakfast before he left for the college.

3. I thought that my sister ..... (come)

### **d. Past Perfect Continuous Tense:**

Past Perfect Continuous Tense is used when the action began in the past and it continued and it was still continuing at the appointed time in the past. The Past



Perfect Continuous tense is not used with verbs that are not used in continuous form, except with want and sometimes, wish:

The child was delighted with his new toy. He had been wanting one for a long time.

Affirmative	Had been + 1st form +Ing
Negative	Had not been + 1st form + Ing
Interrogative	Had + Subject – been -?

### Exercise

1. Sudesh..... (work) in the company for six years before she..... (leave) it.
2. He ..... (sleep) for two hours when the thieves went into his house.
3. She..... (prepare) tea for five minutes when the guests came.
4. His finger... (not bleed) for half an hour when the doctor checked it.

### 5.3.5 Future Tense

In English, there are four ways of discussing future time:

- a. Simple future / Future Indefinite Tense
- b. Future Continuous Tense
- c. Future Perfect Tense
- d. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

#### a. Simple Future Tense

Future Indefinite Tense is used to express an action which is believed to take place sometime in future. This tense is used to express intention, determination, duty, offer, assurance etc.

Take a look at the following sentences:

You shall go home today.

I will sing today.



You shall play tomorrow.

The function will begin at 9 00 am.

Affirmative Will / shall + 1st form

Negative Will not / shall not + 1st form

Interrogative Will / shall – subject -?

For e.g.

I shall go to Delhi. Shall I go to Delhi?

I shall not go to Delhi. Shall I not go to Delhi?

### Use of 'will' and 'shall'

#### Will is used for:

- Intention, Determination, Invitation, Assurance.
- Request or offering help.
- Planned future incident / event.
- Spontaneous decisions.

#### Shall is used for:

- Duty: You shall defend your motherland.
- Suggestion: Shall we go for a coffee.
- Offer: Shall I bring a glass of water for you?
- Rules: You shall obey the traffic rules.

#### Exercise-

**Use Simple Future tense and convert each of the sentences into negative and interrogative sentences:**

1. She .....my friend to the park. (take)



2. They..... a house soon. (buy)
3. I ..... the party. (attend)
4. Will you..... the salt? (pass)
5. He ..... drinking soon? (stop)

**b. Future Continuous Tense**

Future Continuous tense is used to express an action that is going on at a given point of time in the future. It is used to express future action that will begin in future and continue after a given period of time. The following table gives the various forms of the simple future continuous tense:

Affirmative	Will be / shall be + 1st form + Ing
Negative	Will not be / shall not be + 1st form + Ing
Interrogative	Will / shall - subject – be?

This tense is used to express future events that are planned for e.g.

-I will be staying here till the exams are over.

This tense is not used in conditional clauses. In its place, we use the Present Perfect tense. e.g.

-When we have finished our homework, we shall play.

In Interrogative sentences this tense is used to get information in a polite manner for e.g.

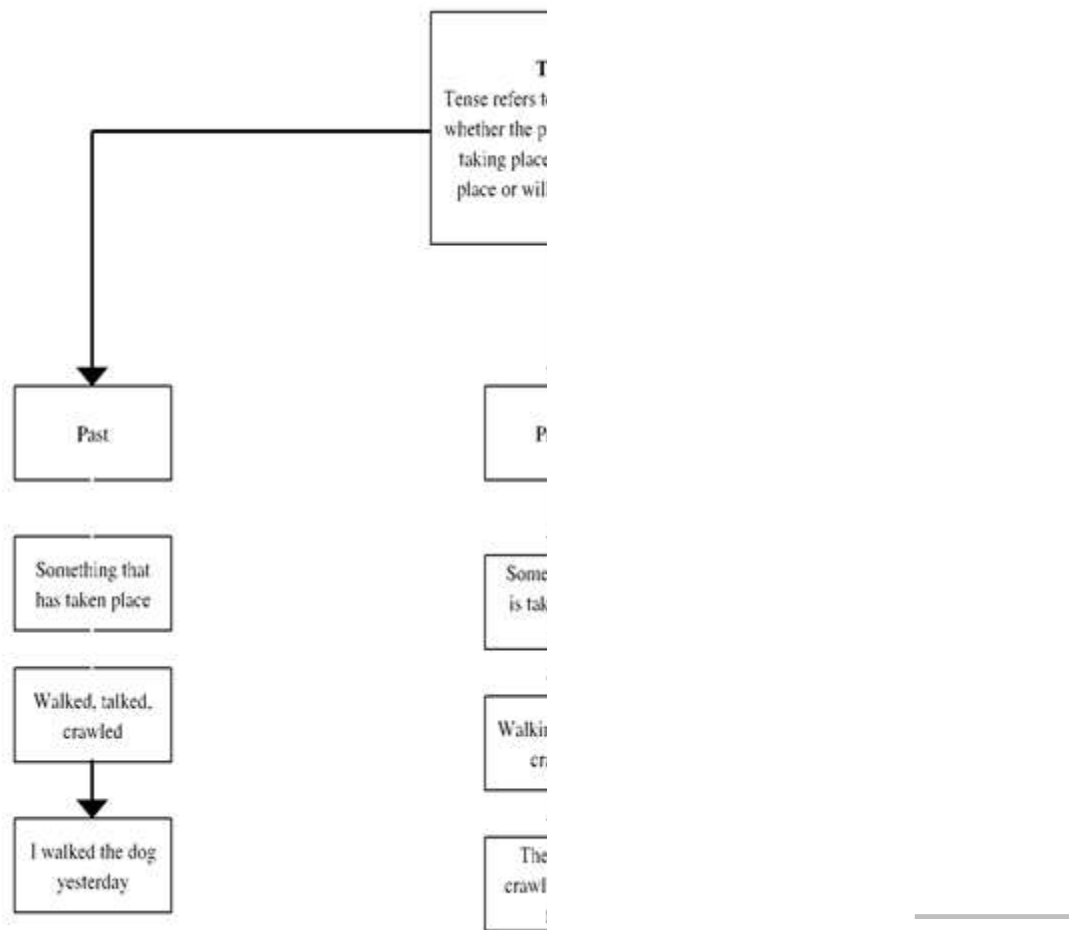
Will you be coming with us to watch the movie

We shall be singing.

We shall not be singing.

Shall we be singing?

Shall we not be singing?



### Exercise-

#### Fill in the blanks with future continuous tense:

1. Don't ring up now, Sohna ..... (rest) at this time.
2. Rohan's sister..... (marry) today.
3. Rahul .... (buy) a car soon.
4. Soham .... all day today for her birthday (shop)
5. After some years, people..... (go) to Moon for holiday.

#### c. Future Perfect Tense”

Future perfect Tense is used to express the completion of an action or event in the future. This tense form is used to talk about a future action that can be completed in a particular time.

Look at the sentence below: The gardener will have watered the plants before the sun rises.

Affirmative                      Will/ shall+have+3rd form verb

Negative                        Will/ shall not+have+3rd form

Interrogative                      Will / shall +subject+have+3rd form of verb

### Exercise-

#### Fill in the blanks with Future Perfect tense forms of the words given in brackets and also convert the sentences into negative and interrogative forms:

1. Rajesh.... by the time you call him. (sleep)
2. The Police.....the thief by now. (catch)
3. I..... my work by the time you come back home. (finish)
4. I ..... ten thousand rupees by the year end. (save)

**d. Future Perfect Continuous Tense:**

Future Perfect Continuous tense expresses the continuity of an action up to a specific time in future. This tense form is used to express actions that began in the past and which will be in progress over a period of time that will end in the future. Look at the sentence below: By the end of the year, I shall have been working in the college for 11 years.

The following table gives the various form of the Future Perfect Continuous tense:

Affirmative	Will have been / shall have been + 1st form + ing
Negative	Will not have been / shall not have been + 1st form + ing
Interrogative	Will / shall – subject – have been?

I shall have been doing washing tomorrow.

I shall not have been doing washing tomorrow.

Shall I have been doing washing tomorrow?

Shall I not have been doing washing tomorrow?

**Use Future Perfect Continuous tense in the following sentences: -**

1. In another two years, they ..... (work) here for five years.
2. By the time father retires, I ..... for five years. (retire)
3. We ..... the live match. (watch)
4. When I come back to you at 6 O' clock, you..... (rest) for 3 hours.

**5.4 Further Main Body of the Text****5.4.0 Voice- Active and Passive****5.4.1 Active Voice and Passive Voice**





When the sentence is presented through the point of view of the subject; the subject is the agent of the action and the action verb is used to denote the action, it is called active voice. They have a subject, a verb and a direct object.

For Example: Mr. Sharma clicked the photograph. Here 'Mr. Sharma', the subject is the doer of the action. The action is indicated by the action verb 'clicked'. The object of the action is 'photograph'. When the sentence is presented from the point of view of the 'object'; the subject is not the agent of the action and the action is shown through the passive verb, it is called the Passive voice. The sentence has only an object, and a verb. The subject placed at the end can be omitted.

For Example: The photograph was clicked by Mr. Sharma.

Here object 'photograph' is given the main position, and the action is denoted by the passive verb, 'was clicked'. The subject Mr. Sharma can be omitted.

Read the following sentence carefully.

The grandmother gave the sweets to me. (Active Voice) Here, 'sweets' is the direct object and 'me' is indirect object. We can change this sentence into passive form by two ways.

- i) The sweets were given to me by the grandmother.

#### 5.4.2 Difference between Active Voice and Passive Voice:

To understand the difference in both voices, we should focus on the subject and the object of a sentence. We know that every sentence has a subject, a verb and an object. The sequence of subject and object as in Active Voice, is reversed when it is expressed in Passive Voice. Read the following example for better understanding this difference –

**Active Voice** Radha loves Geeta. (Subject) (Verb) Active form

Passive Voice

Geeta is loved by Radha.



(Subject) (Verb) (Object) (Passive form)

**Active Voice: Subject + Verb + object**

**Passive Voice: Object + Verb + Subject**

Apart from reversing the sequence of subject and object, the form of the verb of sentence also changes in both Voices. The only form of verb used in Passive Voice is the 3rd form of the verb which is also called Past Participle.

It will be noticed that when the Verb is changed from the Active Voice to Passive voice, the object of the transitive verb in the Active Voice becomes the subject of the Verb in the Passive Voice. Since the object of a verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the passive form, it follows that only Transitive Verbs can be used in the passive voice, because an Intransitive Verb has no object.

#### 5.4.3 General Rules to change the Voice:

Rules for changing Active Voices into Passive Voices are as follows:

1. As mentioned earlier, the structure of sentence will be reversed in Passive Voice. The places of the subject and the object will interchange. While changing from Active Voice to Passive Voice subject will shift to the place of Object and the object will take the place of subject in Passive Voice.

Example: Radha lights the candle. (Active Voice)

The candle is lighted by Radha. (Passive Voice)

2. If object have the pronoun of objective case change it with the help of this rule:

Me = I                      Us = We

You = you                him = He

Her = She                it = It

Then = They            Whom = who



If subject have the pronoun of nomination case change it with the help of this rule, like:-

I = by me                      we = by us  
 You = by you                      He = by him  
 She = by her                      it = by it  
 They = by them                      who = by whom

The passive voice is formed with the suitable tense of the verb be followed by the past participle. Study this table:

Tense (or Modal+ base)	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Simple present	take	am taken
	takes	is taken/are taken
Present Continuous	am taking	am being taken
	is taking	is being taken
	are taking	are being taken
Present Perfect	has taken	has been taken
	have taken	have been taken
Simple Past	took	was taken/were taken
Past Continuous	was taking	was being taken
	we're taking	were being taken
Past perfect	had taken	had been taken
Simple Future	will take	will be taken
	shall take	shall be taken
Can/may/must etc + base	can take	can be taken



must take

must be taken

3. Only Past Participle form or 3rd form of verb (e.g. taken etc.) will always be used as main verb in passive voices for all tenses. No other form of verb will be used as main verb. It can be seen in all the examples given on this page.

4. The word “by” will be used before subject in the passive voice. Example:

The peon opened the gate. (Active Voice)

The gate was opened by the peon. (Passive Voice)

5. The Active Voice is used when the agent (i.e. doer of the action) is to be made prominent; the Passive, when the person or thing acted upon is to be made prominent. The passive is generally preferred when the active form would use an indefinite or vague pronoun or noun (somebody, people, we, they etc.) as subject; that is, when we do not have the clear idea about agent or do not know who the agent is. For example:

Active = I have been invited to the party.

Passive = Someone has invited me to the party.

Active = My pen has been stolen.

Passive = Somebody has stolen my pen.

#### 5.4.4 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs:

We have already learnt that a verb is a word that expresses action, feeling or existence. Many verbs can be both transitive and intransitive. An action verb with a direct object is transitive while an action verb with no direct object is intransitive. Now study the following sentences:

(a) Ram laughs. (b) Rajat plays.

(b) Sita dances. (d) Suraj sleeps.



In these sentences no object is used with verb (laughs, dances, plays, sleeps) and the meaning of the sentence is also clear so these words are intransitive verbs. When an object is used with the verb it is called Transitive verb. Let us see these examples:

1. Ram writes a letter.
2. Gita plays tennis.
3. Neha loves her mother.
4. Sachin sings a song.

In these sentences object letter, tennis, mother, and song are respectively used for the verbs writes, plays, loves, and sings. These words are intransitive verbs.

Read the examples:

Transitive Verb	Intransitive Verb
1. Open all the windows	the car stopped
2. The boys fly their kites.	Birds fly
3. The driver stopped the car.	The glass broke.
4. He broke the glass.	Sit there

We can notice in the following examples that a Transitive verb is one that is used with an object. In the following sentences open, fly, stopped and broke are transitive verbs. Similarly stopped, fly, broke and sit are intransitive verbs. So, we can conclude that a transitive verb is that which is used with an object and an intransitive verb does not have an object.

#### Change from Active Voice to Passive Voice:

Note the changes from Active Voice to Passive Voice in these sentences.

Active Voice	Passive Voice
1. The hunter killed the lion.	The lion was killed by the hunter.



- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. I write a letter. | A letter is written by me. |
| 3. I eat an apple.   | An apple is eaten by me.   |
| 4. He bought a car.  | A car was bought by him.   |

As studied earlier it can be noticed that the sequence of the subject and the object of the sentence is reversed while converting the sentence from Active voice to passive voice.

**Active Voice = Subject + Verb + Object**

**Passive Voice = Object + Verb + Subject**

Let us see some more examples: - When Verb that take both a direct and an indirect object in the Active voice are changed to the Passive, either object may become the subject of the Passive Verb, while the other is retained.

#### **Transitive verb with two objects**

Sometimes Verb has two objects in which one object is person and the other is thing. Person is the indirect object and thing is the direct object. Remember, many a times Indirect object comes first and direct object comes at the second position. For example:

1. Mr. Sharma teaches us Hindi.
2. Ram gave a gift to me.
3. Mother told me a story.

#### **Exercises**

Change the following sentences so that the verbs will be in the Passive Voice.

1. He loves me.
2. She lights the candle.
3. He is driving a car.



4. She is watering the plants.
5. Who is singing a song?
6. I am not running a race.
7. She has not stolen my book.

**Change the following sentences so that the verbs will be in the Active Voice :**

1. All the milk was drunk by the cat.
2. I was not expected by them.
3. The windows have been cleaned.
4. A letter is written by me.
5. A camera is bought by him.
6. The dish had not been tested by me.

**Study the Table:**

<b>Tense</b>	<b>Active Voice</b>	<b>Passive Voice</b>
Present Indefinite	1st form+ /s/es	is/am/are/+ 3rd form
(Negative)	do not/does not+ 1st form	is/am/are+not+3rd form
Present continuous	is/am/are+V1+ing	is/am/are+being+V3
(Negative)	is/am/are+not+ 1st form+ing	is/am/are+not+being+3rd form
Present perfect	has/have+3rd form	has/have+been+3rd form
(Negative)	has/have+not+3rd form	has/have +not been+3rd form
Past Indefinite	2nd form	was/were+3rd form
(Negative)	did not+ 1st form	was/were+not+3rd form
Past continuous	was/were+ 1st form +ing	was/were+being+3rd form
(Negative)	was/were+not+ 1st form + ing	was/were+not+being+3rd form



Past perfect	had+ 3rd form	had been + 3rd form
(Negative)	had not + 3rd form	had not+ been+ 3rd form
Future Indefinite	will/shall+1st form	will/shall+ be + 3rd form
(Negative)	will/shall not + 1st form	will/shall+ not be +3rd form
Future Perfect	will/shall+ have + 3rd form	will/shall+have+been+3rd form

### 5.5 Check your Progress -

#### A. Fill the gaps with the correct tenses.

1. I (learn) ..... English for seven years now.
2. But last year I (not / work) ..... hard enough for English, that's why my marks (not / be) ... really that good then.
3. As I (pass / want) ..... my English exam successfully next year, I (study) harder... this term.
4. During my last summer holidays, my parents (send) ..... me on a language course to London.
5. It (be) .... great and I think I (learn) .... a lot.
6. Before I (go) .... to London, I (not / enjoy) .... learning English.

#### B. Change into passive voice

1. We had lost the key. -
2. They had started a fight. -
3. The sun rises from the east
4. Reema can do skydiving.
5. I ate the strawberry pie





## 5.6 SUMMARY

The concept of English verb tenses is very important in establishing effective communication. Hence, if you want to maintain both ways of communication better, that is, speaking and writing you need to gain mastery over English tenses, because a command of twelve basic tenses of English language will aid you immensely in gaining effective communication skills. The term, tense, has been derived from the Latin word “tempus” meaning time. Since there are many ways in which we express the time of action, we use tenses.

### ➤ TYPES OF TENSES

**Present- Simple Present** -Base verb (+ es/es for third person):

I watch the news every day.

**Present Continuous**-am/is/are + present participle:

I am watching the news.

**Present Perfect**-Has/have + past participle:

I have watched the news already.

**Present Perfect Continuous**-Has/have + been + present participle:

I have been watching the news since I was a teenager.

**Past -Simple Past**- Verb+ ed or irregular verb:

I watched the news.

**Past Continuous** - Was/were + present participle:

I was watching the news.

**Past Perfect**- Had + past participle:

I had watched the news before I went to bed.



**Past Perfect Continuous**- I had been watching the news for 20 minutes before you came home.

**Future- Simple Future**- Will+ verb

Am/is/are + going to + verb

I will watch the news / I am going to watch the news.

**Future Continuous**- Will be + present participle

Am/is/are + going to be + present participle:

I will be watching the news at 9pm. / I am going to be watching the news at 9pm.

**Future Perfect**- Will have + past participle

Am/is/are + going to have + past participle

I will have watched the news before 10pm. / I am going to have watched the news.

**Future Perfect Continuous**- Will have been + present participle

Am/is/are + going to have been + present participle

- **Active and Passive voice:** Words come together to form a sentence and these sentences can be formed in more than one way. The way these sentences are made make a lot of difference in writing **Active voice:** When a subject is directly acting on the object, the sentence is written in Active voice **Passive voice:** When the object is acted upon by the subject, the sentence is written in Passive voice. In both the above sentences, the meaning remains the same and only the structure is what that changes. Usually, the structure or sequence of the subject, verb, and object expressed in the active voice sentence gets reversed in the passive voice of the same sentence. To understand the difference, just focus on how the subject and object change the structure of the sentences in the table below:

**Active Voice**

**Passive Voice**



I ate the strawberry pie	The strawberry pie was eaten by me
I bought a Honda car subject)	A Honda car was bought by me object as the
I bought a Honda car	A Honda car was bought by me
The sun rises from the east	East is where the sun rises from
Reema can do skydiving.	Sky diving can be done by Reema

**Note-** how the meaning has stayed the same throughout.

### 5.7 KEYWORDS

**Simple Present Tense:** it is used to describe an action, event or condition in simple way.

**Present Continuous Tense:** It is used to denote an action which is going on at the time of speaking.

**Present Perfect Tense:** It is used in the sentences which began its action in the past but it will be completed in the present.

**The Past tense** is a grammatical tense whose principal function is to place an action or situation in past time.

**Simple Future Tense:** it is used to express an action which is believed to take place in future

**Subject** it refers to the person or thing that is doing the action expressed by the verb.

**Object:** Object in a sentence as the entity that is acted upon by the subject.

### 5.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)

Q1. Explain Present Tense and its types?

Q2. Describe Present Indefinite and Present Continuous tense with suitable examples?



Q3. Explain Past Tense and its types?

Q4. How will you differentiate between Past Perfect and Past Perfect Continuous tense?

Q5. Explain Future Tense with its types?

Q6. Write a short note on Active Voice with suitable examples.?

Q7. Write a short note on Passive Voice with suitable examples.?

Q8. Discuss in detail Transitive Verbs?

### **5.9 Answers to Check Your Progress-**

#### **A-Tenses**

1. I have been learning English for seven years now.

2. But last year I was not working hard enough for English, that's why my marks were not really that good then.

3. As I want to pass my English exam successfully next year, I am going to study harder this term.

4. During my last summer holidays, my parents sent me on a language course to London.

5. It was great and I think I learned a lot.

6. Before I went to London, I had not enjoyed learning English.

#### **B. voice -**

1. The tables had been cleaned by Joe.

2. We had lost the key. - The key had been lost by us.

3. East is where the sun rises from here had started a fight. -

4. A fight had been started by them.

5. Skydiving can be done by Reema.



6. The strawberry pie was eaten by me.

**5.10 References/ Suggested Readings**

- New Oxford Advanced Learners Dictionary.
- English Grammar, Composition & Usage: J.C. Newfield, Revised by N.K. Agarwal.
- English Grammar – An outline of General Phonetics; R.K. Bansal; OUP: 1971
- Spoken English for India; R.K. Bansal and J.B. Harrison; Longman.  
Intermediate English Grammar; Raymond Murphy etc.



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 6</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Narration and Phrasal Verbs</b>	

## Structure of Lesson

### 6.1 Learning Objectives

### 6.2 Introduction

### 6.3 Main Body of the Text

#### 6.3.0 Reported Speech

#### 6.3.1 Narration (Direct and Indirect speech)

#### 6.3.2 Direct Speech

#### 6.3.3 Indirect Speech

#### 6.3.4 Change the adverbs of the Direct Speech.

#### 6.3.5 Rules of change of Pronouns

### 6.4 Rules for Speech

#### 6.4.1 Rules of change of verb or Tense

#### 6.4.2 Rules for Change in Narration of different type of sentences

##### a. Assertive Sentences

##### b. Interrogative Sentences

#### 6.4.3 Reporting exclamatory sentences

### 6.5 Further Main Body of the Text



### **6.5.0 Phrasal-Transitive Verbs**

#### **6.5.1 Phrasal verbs**

#### **6.5.2 Inseparable Phrasal Verbs (Transitive)**

#### **6.5.3 Three-Word Phrasal Verbs (Transitive)**

### **6.6 Phrasal-Intransitive Verbs**

#### **6.6.1 Intransitive Phrasal Verbs**

### **6.7 Check Your Progress**

### **6.8 Summary**

### **6.9 Keywords**

### **6.10 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)**

### **6.11 Answers to check your progress**

### **6.12 References/ Suggested Readings**

#### **6.1 Learning Objectives:**

- To make the students to choose words with greater precision
- To acquaint the students with the specialist vocabulary associated with communication and literary area.
- To make the students learn to communicate knowledge and ideas in appropriate way.
- To inculcate among the student's skill to identify words and/or phrases related to the topic.
- This part will help you to analyze sentences structurally and functionally for the practical usage. -To give valuable knowledge of narration and phrasal verbs to students.



## 6.2 Introduction:

Vocabulary, or word meaning, is one of the keys to comprehension. Student's develop vocabulary indirectly through reading, listening, and speaking. Students' background knowledge and prior experiences play a large role in vocabulary development. They build connections between known words and unknown words and develop a deeper understanding of their reading. Along with the knowledge of correct grammar, it is important to know its correct practical use. In this part, you will study sentences in larger context for social as well as academic purposes. You will learn to construct and synthesize the sentences. You will also learn to transform the sentences without changing their meaning.

In this unit, vocabulary exercises are provided. These exercises encourage students to figure out the meaning of unfamiliar words and expressions from context. The purpose of reading the prose, "On Saying Please" is to pose one or more questions for students to consider as they read the piece, giving them some aspect, feature, or idea on which to focus their attention. Students will be referred back to these questions after they read and discuss the piece to confirm their understanding. Expansion questions are interpretive and require a critical thinking. These questions lend themselves to various interpretations, and allow students to connect their personal experiences to the literature. The questions in this section deal with issues of values clarification, requiring students to reflect on their personal values as these relate to the unit themes.

## 6.3 Main Body of the Text

### 6.3.0 Reported Speech

#### 6.3.1 Narration (Direct and Indirect speech)

When we want to report a conversation to someone who was absent at the time of actual conversation, we can do it by two ways.

i) Quoting of the actual speech of the speaker is called Direct Speech.





ii) Reporting the speech of the speaker into one's own words is called Indirect or Reported Speech. For Example: Leena said, I am helping my mother now."

(Direct Speech) Leena said that she was helping her then. (Indirect Speech) The direct speech is marked with double inverted commas. Here 'said' is called principle or reporting verb. There are some changes made while changing the direct speech into indirect speech. Rules of changing the Direct Speech to Indirect / Reported Speech.

i) Remove the double inverted commas and use the conjunction 'that' after the reporting verb.

ii) If the reporting verb is in the past tense then change the whole speech into the past tense. But if the reporting verb is in the present tense then do not change the tense.

For Example:

a) She said, "I like shopping." (Reporting verb 'said' is in past tense. Direct speech – simple present tense) She said that she liked shopping. (Direct speech changes to simple past tense)

b) she says, "I like shopping." (Reporting verb 'says' is in present tense. Direct speech – simple present tense) She says that she likes shopping.

**Note- The changes in the tense of the direct speech in other cases.**

c. I am going to the mall" said Vishal. (Present continuous tense)

Vishal said that he was going to the mall. (Past continuous tense)

d) The teacher said, 'Radha' has passed with good grades." (Present perfect tense)

The teacher told that Radha had passed with good grades. (Past perfect tense)

**Art of reporting the words of a speaker is called Narration. There are two main ways of reporting the words of a speaker.**

**a. Direct Speech****b. Indirect Speech**

**6.3.2 Direct Speech-** In this form, the actual words of the speaker are put in quotes “”.

Ex: -

Rama said, “I am very busy now.”

In the above example the Speaker i.e

Rama is known as Reporter,

said is known as Reporting verb and

“I am very busy now.” is known as Reported Speech.

**6.3.3 Indirect Speech**

In this form, the actual words of the speaker are transformed and said/written in a simple manner.

Ex: Rama said that he was very busy then. Basic rules to convert a Direct Speech to Indirect Speech. There are five basic things that have to be changed while converting a Direct speech to an Indirect speech. To change the reporting verb according to the reported speech. To remove the inverted comma 's from the direct speech and replace them with an appropriate conjunction. To change the pronoun of reported speech accordingly.

**6.3.4 Change the adverbs of the Direct Speech.**

Active - Rajiv said to me, “I shall go to the picture today”

Passive - Rajiv told me that he would go to the picture that day.

In the above example-

Reporting verb said to is changed into told. Inverted Commas are replaced by the conjunction that. Reported speech's pronoun I is changed into He.



Reported speech's verb shall go is changed into would go. As another change today is changed with the word that day.

### 6.3.5 Rules of change of Pronouns:

Nominative	Possessive	Objective	Reflexive
I	My	Me	Myself
We	Our	Us	Ourselves
You	Yours	You	Yourself
He	His	Him	Himself
She	Her	Her	Herself
They	Their	Them	Themselves

Pronouns are changed according to a rule designated as SON where

**S stands for Subject**

**O stands for Object**

**N stands for No change.**

First person changes to subject of Reporting Verb

Second person changes to Object of Reporting Verb

There is no change if it is a Third person.

#### Rule No 1.

1st Person pronoun of Reported speech is changed according to the Subject of Reporting verb.

Direct: She says, "I am in tenth class."

Indirect: She says that she is in tenth class.

Direct: I say, "I am an honest man."



Indirect: I say that I am an honest man.

**Rule No 2.-** 2nd Person pronoun of Reported speech is changed according to Object of Reporting verb.

Direct: She says to me, "you have done your work"

Indirect: She tells me that I have done my work.

Direct: She says to her, "You have done your work"

Indirect: She tells her that she has done her work.

Direct: I say to them, "you have done your work."

Indirect: I tell them that they have done their work.

**Rule No 3-** 3rd Person Pronoun of Reported speech is not changed.

Direct: He says, "He does not work hard"

Indirect: He says that he does not work hard.

Direct: Everybody says, "They have spoken the truth"

Indirect: Everybody says that they have spoken the truth

## 6.4 Rules for Speech

### 6.4.1 Rules of change of verb or Tense

#### Rule No.1

**If reporting verb is given in Present or Future tense then there will be no change in the verb or tense of Reported speech.**

Direct: The teacher says, "Gayatri performs on the stage"

Indirect: The teacher says that Gayatri performs on the stage.

Direct: The teacher is saying, "Gayatri performs on the stage"

Indirect: The teacher is saying that Gayatri performs on the stage.



Direct: The teacher will say, "Gayatri is performing on the stage"

Indirect: The teacher will say that Gayatri is performing on the stage.

**Rule No.2**

If reporting verb is given in Past tense then the tense of the verb of Reported Speech will change into corresponding Past tense.

Direct: The teacher said, "I am suffering from fever."

Indirect: The teacher said that she was suffering from fever.

Direct: She said to me, "I took the breakfast in the morning".

Indirect: She told me that she had taken the breakfast in the morning.

-- Corresponding Changes to past form in an indirect speech from the verb in Reported speech.

Simple present changes to Simple Past

Present Continuous changes to Past Continuous

Present Perfect changes to Past Perfect

Present Perfect Continuous changes to Past Perfect Continuous

Simple Past changes to Past Perfect

Past Continuous changes to Past Perfect Continuous

In Future Tense will/ Shall changes to would

Can changes to Could

May changes to Might

**Some of the exceptional cases of Rule 2****Exception 1:**



If Reporting speech has Universal Truth or Habitual fact then there is no change in the Tense.

Direct: Our teacher said, "The earth is round"

Indirect: Our teacher said that the earth is round. (Universal Truth)

Direct: Rajiv said to me, "He plays with right hand"

Indirect: Rajiv told me that he plays with the right hand. (Habitual fact)

**Exception 2:**

If reporting speech has Past Historical Fact then there is no change in the Tense.

Direct: Our teacher said, "Asoka left war after the conquest of Kalinga".

Indirect: Our teacher said that Asoka left war after the conquest of Kalinga.

**Exception 3:**

If Reporting speech has two actions to be happening at a time when there is no change in the Tense.

Direct: She said "My wife was making lunch when I was studying"

Indirect: She said that her wife was making lunch when she was studying.

**Exception 4:**

If Reporting speech has some Imagined Condition then there is no change in the Tense.

Direct: She said, "If I were rich, I would help him."

Indirect: She said that if she were rich, she would help her.

**Exception 5:**

If Reporting speech contains had 3rd form, to-infinitive and would, could, should, must, might, ought to etc. then there is no change in the Tense.

Direct: She said to me, "You should obey your elders."



Indirect: She told me that I should obey my elders.

Some other small changes that used to take place while changing Direct Speech to Indirect Speech.

<b>Here</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>There</b>
<b>Now</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Then</b>
<b>This</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>That</b>
<b>These</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Those</b>
<b>Today</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>That day</b>
<b>To-night</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>That night</b>
<b>Yesterday</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>the previous day</b>
<b>Last night</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>the previous night</b>
<b>Last week</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>the previous week</b>
<b>Tomorrow</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>the next day</b>
<b>Next Week</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>the following week</b>
<b>Ago</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Before</b>
<b>Thus,</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>so</b>
<b>Hence</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Thence</b>
<b>Hither</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Thither</b>
<b>Come</b>	<b>Changes to</b>	<b>Go</b>

**Note-** in indirect speech we talk about such incidents that are after the time of reporting and had happened away from the place of reporting therefore the words that show nearness has to be replaced by the words that show distance.

Some exception in these changes-



1. Come is changed to go if there is some word given after come that shows nearness.
2. If this, here and now points to such a thing, place or time that is in front of the speaker then no change takes place in Indirect Narration.

#### **6.4.2 Rules for Change in Narration of different type of sentences**

##### **a. Assertive Sentences**

###### **Rule 1-**

If there is no object after Reporting verb there it should not be changed.

If there is some object after Reporting verb then say is changed to tell, says to tells and said to told.

According to the context said to can be replaced by replied, informed, stated, added, remarked, asserted, assured, pleaded, reminded, reported or complained etc.

###### **Rule 2**

Put conjunction that in place of “ ”. Change the pronouns of the Reported speech as enlisted earlier.

##### **Examples showing some Assertive Sentences Changed into Indirect form.**

Direct: She said to me, “I shall sleep now”

Indirect: She told me that she would play then.

Direct: He said, “My brother’s marriage comes off next month.”

Indirect: He said that his brother’s marriage would come off the following month.

##### **b. - Interrogative Sentences**

###### **Rule 1**

An interrogative sentence is meant to ask questions, therefore, Reporting verb said/said to is changed to asked.

Said to can also be changed into enquired or demanded



**Rule 2**

If question is formed with the help of any of the helping verbs like is/are/am, was/were, has/have, do/does, will/would etc then “\_\_” are to be replaced by if or whether

If the question is formed with the help of words starting with “Wh ‘ like who, whose, what, whom, when etc (also known as W family) or How then to replace “\_\_\_” no conjunction is used.

**Rule 3**

In these sentences question form of the sentence is removed and full-stop is put at the end of the sentence.

Helping verb is /are/am, was/were etc should be put after the subject.

If the interrogative sentence is expressing positive feeling then do/does of the Direct speech is removed while converting it into Indirect speech.

If the interrogative sentence is expressing negative feeling then do/does of the Direct speech is changed into did while converting it into Indirect speech.

Did or has/have the interrogative sentence is changed to had.

**Rule 4**

Pronouns and verbs are changed according to the set rule of Narration. 4. Modals:  
c. Modal verbs like shall, will, can, may change in reported speech. Let's follow some examples:

Direct: John said, “I will be there.”

Indirect: John promised that he would be there.

Direct: The boy said, “May I come in?”

Indirect: The boy asked if he could come in. (note: may become could when it implies permission)



Direct: "I may not call you." Said Bobby.

Indirect: Bobby said that she might not call me.

Direct: "I shall practice more." said Barbara.

Indirect: Barbara said that she would practice more.

Direct: Joseph said, "Shall I buy the car?"

Indirect: Joseph asked if he should buy the car.

Note: shall become should if it implies a question.

#### **6.4.3 Reporting exclamatory sentences:**

To change direct exclamatory speeches to the indirect one we need to replace interjection (hurrah, wow, alas, oh, etc.) with joining clause 'that' and the exclamatory wh-words (what, how) will be replaced by 'very' before the adjective in the reported clause.

#### **Examples:**

Direct: Clare said, "Hurrah! Barcelona won the match!"

Indirect: Clare exclaimed with joy that Barcelona had won the match.

Direct: I said, "Alas! My pet died."

Indirect: I exclaimed with grief that my pet had died. We will use 'to' as joining clause before the reported command or request, and the reported verb will be changed according to the moods of the sentence (e.g., ordered, requested, urged, advised, forbade or begged)

#### **Example:**

Direct: The man said, "Please, bring me a chair."

Indirect: The man requested to bring him a chair.

Direct: The officer said, "Fall back!"



Indirect: The officer ordered to fall back.

Direct: Mother said, "Listen to your elders."

Indirect: Mother advised me to listen to my elders.

Direct: Mr. Murphy said, "Do not go near the house."

Indirect: Mr. Murphy forbade going near the house.

## 6.5 Further Main Body of the Text

### 6.5.0 Phrasal-Transitive Verbs:

#### 6.5.1 Phrasal verbs-

Phrasal verbs are formed by adding particles with verbs. This particle which is added is either a preposition or an adverb. But the whole phrasal verb has one definite meaning. Change of particle added leads to change in the meaning of the phrasal verb. It is very important to note that phrasal verbs have completely different meanings from the parts of which they are made of. Now some of the important phrasal verbs are given for you to learn. You should pay special attention to their meanings and you are not to be misguided

by the meaning of particle added to the verb. You should try to use them English can be used in both formal or polite way and informal, familiar or colloquial manner. Those who learn English in the classroom and not exposed amply to outside the classroom, may not have access to its colloquial variety. A phrasal verb is combination of a standard verb (especially native) like 'go' or 'look' and a preposition or an adverb which are called particles. This combination forms a new verb with totally different meaning. For example,

- a. She put a box on the table.
- b. She put out a candle.

In the sentence (b) put out means 'stop something from burning'. In the sentence (a) put has its common meaning 'keep'.



Phrasal verbs are important because they are extremely common in colloquial English. If you are not familiar with them, you will find informal English difficult to understand. A good dictionary has the entries of the phrasal verbs. If you want to master phrasal verbs and consequently English, develop a habit to look for phrasal verbs. There are three types of phrasal verbs:

1. Phrasal verbs (intransitive) that do not take an object:  
blow in: My brother blew in unexpectedly with his family. (visit unexpectedly)  
come along: If you want, you can come along. (accompany)
  2. Phrasal verbs (transitive) with an Object:  
hand back: Will she hand back my book? (return)  
pick out: Sunita picked out a lively suit. (choose)
  3. Phrasal verbs with two particles: stand up for: Everybody must stand up for the truth. (defend) put up with: Nobody should put up with injustice. (tolerate)
- English can be used in both formal or polite way and informal, familiar or colloquial manner. Those who learn English in the classroom and not exposed amply to outside the classroom, may not have access to its colloquial variety. A phrasal verb is combination of a standard verb (especially native) like 'go' or 'look' and a preposition or an adverb which are called particles. This combination forms a new verb with totally different meaning. For example,

You have to do this paint job over.

You have to do over this paint job.

When the object of the following phrasal verbs is a pronoun, the two parts of the phrasal verb must be separated:

You have to do it over.



Verb	Meaning	Example
Blow Up	Explode	The terrorists tried to blow up the railroad station.
Bring up	Mention a topic	My mother brought up that little matter of my prison record Again.
Bring up	Raise children	It isn't easy to bring up children nowadays.
Call Off	Cancel	They called off this afternoon's meeting
Do Over	Repeat a job	Do this homework over.
Fill Out	Complete a form	Fill out this application form and mail it in.
Fill up	Fill to Capacity	She filled up the grocery cart with free food.
Find out	Discover	My sister found out that her husband had been planning something.
Give Away	Give something to someone else for free	The filling station was giving away free gas.
Give back	Return an object	My brother borrowed my car. I think he's not about to give it Back.
Hand in	Submit something (Assignment)	The students handed in their papers and left the room.
Hang up	Put something on hook or receiver	She hung up the phone before she hung up her clothes.
Hold up	Delay	I hate to hold up the meeting, but I have to go to the bathroom.
Hold up (2)	Rob	Three masked gunmen held up the Security Bank this afternoon.
Leave out	Omit	You left out the part about the police chase down Asylum Avenue.
Look over	Examine,	Check, the lawyers looked over the papers carefully before questioning the witness. (They looked them over carefully.)



Look up	Search in a list	You've misspelled this word again. You'd better look it up.
Make up	Invent a story or lie	She knew she was in trouble, so she made up a story about going to the movies with her friends.
Make out	Hear, Understand	He was so far away, we really couldn't make out what he was saying.
Pick out	Choose	There were three men in the line-up. She picked out the guy she thought had stolen her purse.
Pick up	Lift something off something else	The crane picked up the entire house. (Watch them pick it up.)
Point out	Call attention to	As we drove through Paris, Francoise pointed out the major historical sites.
Put away	Save or Store	We put away money for our retirement. She put away the cereal boxes.
Put off	Postpone	We asked the boss to put off the meeting until tomorrow. (Please put it off for another day.)
Put on	Put clothing on the body	I put on a sweater and a jacket. (I put them on quickly.)
Put out	Extinguish	The firefighters put out the house fire before it could spread. (They put it out quickly.)
Read over	Peruse	I read over the homework, but couldn't make any sense of it.
Set up	To arrange, begin	My wife set up the living room exactly the way she wanted it. She set it up.
Take down	Make a written note	These are your instructions. Write them down before you forget.
Take off	Remove clothing	It was so hot that I had to take off my shirt.
Talk over	Discuss	We have serious problems here. Let's talk them over like adults.



Throw away	Discard	That's a lot of money! Don't just throw it away.
Try on	Put clothing on to see if it fits,	She tried on fifteen dresses before she found one, she liked.
Try out	Test	I tried out four cars before I could find one that pleased me.
Turn down	Lower volume	Your radio is driving me crazy! Please turn it down.
Turn down (2)	Reject	He applied for a promotion twice this year, but he was turned down both times.
Turn up	Raise the volume	Grandpa couldn't hear, so he turned up his hearing aid.
Turn off	Switch off electricity	We turned off the lights before anyone could see us.
Turn off (2)	Repulse	It was a disgusting movie. It really turned me off.
Turn on	Switch on the electricity	Turn on the CD player so we can dance.
Use up	Exhaust, use completely	The gang members used up all the money and went out to rob more banks.

**6.5.2 Inseparable Phrasal Verbs (Transitive)** - With the following phrasal verbs, the lexical part of the verb (the part of the phrasal verb that carries the "verb-meaning") cannot be separated from the prepositions (or other parts) that accompany it: "Who will look after my estate when I'm gone?"

Verb	Meaning	Example
Call on	Ask to recite in class	The teacher called on students in the back row.
Call on (2)	Visit	The old minister continued to call on his sick parishioners.



Get over	Recover from sickness or disappointment	I got over the flu, but I don't know if I'll ever get over my broken heart
Go over	Review	The students went over the material before the exam. They should have gone over it twice.
Go through	Use up; consume	The country went through most of its coal reserves in one year. Did he go through all his money already?
Look after	Take care of	My mother promised to look after my dog while I was gone.
Look into	Investigate	The police will look into the possibilities of embezzlement.
Run across	Find by chance	I ran across my old roommate at the college reunion.
Run into	Meet	Carlos ran into his English professor in the hallway.
Take after	Resemble	My second son seems to take after his mother.
Wait on	Serve	It seemed strange to see my old boss wait on tables.

**6.5.3 Three-Word Phrasal Verbs (Transitive)**- With the following phrasal verbs, you will find three parts: "My brother dropped out of school before he could graduate."

Verb	Meaning	Example
Break in on	Interrupt (a conversation)	I was talking to Mom on the phone when the operator broke in on our call.





Catch up with	Keep abreast	After our month-long trip, it was time to catch up with the neighbours and the news around town.
Check up on	Examine, Investigate	Boys promised to check up on the condition of the summer house from time to time.
Come up with	To contribute (suggestion, money)	After years of giving nothing, the old parishioner was able to come up with a thousand-dollar donation.
Cut down on	Curtail (expenses)	We tried to cut down on the money we were spending on entertainment.
Drop out of	Leave school	I hope none of my students drop out of school this semester.
Get along with	Have a good relationship with	I found it very hard to get along with my brother when we were young.
Get away with	Escape blame	Man cheated on the exam and then tried to get away with it.
Get rid of	Eliminate	The citizens tried to get rid of their corrupt mayor in the recent election.
Get through with	Finish	When will you ever get through with that program?
Keep up with	Maintain pace with	It's hard to keep up with the Joneses when you lose your job!
Look forward to	Anticipate with pleasure	I always look forward to the beginning of new.
Look down on	Despise	It's typical of a jingoistic country that the



		citizens look down on their geographical neighbours.
Look in on	Visit (somebody)	We were going to look in on my brother-in-law, but he wasn't home.
Look out for	Be careful, anticipate	Good instructors will look out for early signs of failure in their students
Look up to	Respect	First-graders really look up to their teachers.
Make sure of	Verify	Make sure of the student's identity before you let him into the classroom.
Put up with	Tolerate	The teacher had to put up with a great deal of nonsense from the new students.
Run out of	Exhaust supply	The runners ran out of energy before the end of the race.
Take care of	Be responsible for	My oldest sister took care of us younger children after Mom died.
Talk back to	Answer impolitely	The star player talked back to the coach and was thrown off the team.
Think back on	Recall	I often think back on my childhood with great pleasure.
Walk out on	Abandon	Her husband walked out on her and their three children.

## 6.6 Phrasal-Intransitive Verbs:

**6.6.1 Intransitive Phrasal Verbs** - The following phrasal verbs are not followed by an object: "Once you leave home, you can never really go back again."



Verb	Meaning	Example
Break down	Stop functioning	That old jeep had a tendency to break down just when i needed it the most.
Catch on	Become popular	Songs seem to catch on in California first and then spread eastward.
Come back	Return to a place	Father promised that we would never come back to this horrible place.
Come in	Enter	They tried to come in through the back door, but it was locked.
Come to	Regain consciousness	He was hit on the head very hard, but after several minutes, he started to come to again.
Come over	To visit	The children promised to come over, but they never do.
Drop by	Visit without appointment	We used to just drop by, but they were never home, so we stopped doing that.
Eat out	Dine in a restaurant	When we visited Paris, we loved eating out in the sidewalk cafes.
Get by	Survive	Uncle Heine didn't have much money, but he always seemed to get by without borrowing money from relatives.
Get up	Arise	Grandmother tried to get up, but the couch was too low, and she couldn't make it on her own.
Go back	Return to a place	It's hard to imagine that we will ever go back to Lithuania.
Go on	Continue	He would finish one dickens novel and then



just go on to the next.

Go on (2)	Happen	The cops heard all the noise and stopped to see what was going on.
Grow up	Get older	Charles grew up to be a lot like his father.
Keep away	Remain at a distance	The judge warned the stalker to keep away from his victim's home.
Keep on (with gerund)	Continue with the same	He tried to keep on singing long after his voice was ruined
Pass out	Lose consciousness, faint	He had drunk too much; he passed out on the sidewalk outside the bar.
Show off	Demonstrate haughtily	Whenever he sat down at the piano, we knew he was going to show off.
Show up	arrive	Day after day, Efrain showed up for class twenty minutes late.
Wake up	Arouse from sleep	I woke up when the rooster crowed

Some Other Verbs are as Follows:

Blow up:	explode	bring in:	Yield as the result of sale.
blow out:	extinguish		
break down:	Demolish; collapse; fall.	bring up:	Educate or rear.
break out:	Appear suddenly.	call for:	demand
break into:	Enter by force.	call forth:	evoke
break up:	Dissolve.	call off:	divert; distract
bring about:	Cause.	call on:	visit



call up:	recollect	fall out:	quarrel
carry on:	manage	fall upon:	attack
carry out:	execute	fall through:	fail
cast off:	discard	get at:	obtain
cast out:	expel	get back:	recover
come about:	occur	get down:	descend
come across:	meet with accidentally	get on:	advance; make progress
come by:	acquire	get on with:	live agreeably with
come of:	issue from	get over:	surmount
come upon:	encounter	get through:	pass
cry out against:	complain loudly	get up:	rise
against		give away:	distribute
cry up: extol	praise	give in:	submit; yield
cut down:	reduce	give up:	abandon; surrender
cut off:	kill, destroy	go after:	pursue
cut out for:	fitted for	go forward:	proceed
do away with:	abolish	go on:	continue
drawback:	recede	go through:	examine
draw up:	compile; arrange	hold back:	keep back; conceal
fall back:	retreat	hold on:	continue
fall back upon:	have recourse to	holding	
some help			
fall in with:	concur with		



hold out:	endure	lay out:	invest
hold up:	support, sustain	look after:	deposit
keep back:	conceal	look after:	take care of
keep from:	refrain from	look known upon:	despise
keep under:	control	look for:	sear for
keep up:	maintain	turn on:	switch on
lay by:	save for future use	turn out:	expel
lay down:	surrender	turn up:	arrive

### 6.7 Check Your Progress-

#### 1.Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs.

**Complete with one of these phrasal verbs: be through, go on, fill in, take off, stay out, speak up.**

1. Could you ..... this application form, please?
2. I'll never talk to you again. We ...!
3. If you don't ....., we can't hear you.
4. I'm tired because I ..... too late last night.
5. The plane ..... late because of the bad weather.

#### 2. Complete with one of these phrasal verbs: go off, put off, see off, take off, turn off.

1. Let's go to the airport to ..... them .....
2. The plane doesn't ..... till 5 o'clock.
3. He was sleeping soundly when the alarm clock .....



4. The meeting has been ..... till next month.  
5. Don't forget to ..... all the lights when you leave.

**3. Complete with: carry on, get on, hold on, put on, try on.**

1. Hi! Is Mr. Knight in?  
....., I'll call him.  
2. Excuse me, could I ..... this dress, please?  
3. How are you ..... at college?  
4. Are you still ..... with your tennis lessons?  
5. It was a bit chilly, so she ..... her jacket.

**4. Complete with: give up, hang up, look up, wake up, wash up.**

1. The kind of housework I hate most is .....  
2. If he rings back, just .....  
3. I didn't know that word, so I ..... it ..... in a dictionary.  
4. Don't ..... You can do it if you try hard.  
5. When I ..... in the middle of the night, I had some temperature.

**5. Match the phrasal verbs with their corresponding synonyms.**

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. put off  | a. cancel     |
| 2. call off | b. switch off |
| 3. look up  | c. postpone   |
| 4. go off   | d. continue   |
| 5. carry on | e. explode    |
6. turn off f. check 1. I said to him, "Will you go to Delhi?"

**2. change appropriate direct speech into indirect speech.**

**1. I said to him, "Will you go to Delhi?"**

- (1) I asked him will he go to Delhi.
- (2) I said to him would he go to Delhi.
- (3) I asked him if he would go to Delhi.
- (4) I said to him would you go to Delhi.

**2. He said, 'I have read this novel.'**

- (1) He said that he has read this novel.
- (2) He said that he had read that novel.
- (3) He said that he read that novel.
- (4) He said that he had read this novel.

**3. Tania said to her friend, 'Can you lend me an umbrella?'**

- (1) Please give me an umbrella Tania requested her friend.
- (2) Will you lend me your umbrella; Tania asked her friend.
- (3) Tania requested her friend to lend her an umbrella
- (4) Tania asked her friend to give her an umbrella.

**4. Sita said, 'I may go there.'**

- (1) Sita says that she may go there.
- (2) Sita says that she is going there.
- (3) Sita said that she will go there.
- (4) Sita said that she might go there.

**5. My friend requested me to bring him a sandwich.**

- (1) He said, 'My friend, please bring me a sandwich.'
- (2) My friend said, 'Will you bring me a sandwich.'





(3) 'Please bring me a sandwich', said my friend.

(4) 'Please bring my friend a sandwich', said he.

**6. He said, 'If I had the tools, I could mend the car.'**

(1) He said that if he had the tools, he could mend the car.

(2) He tells that he had the tools he could mend the car.

(3) He said I could mend the car if I have the tools.

(4) He told he could mend the car.

**7. She said to the children, 'You mustn't play with fire.'**

(1) She told the children they were not to play with fire.

(2) She told the children that they mustn't play with fire.

(3) She told the children not to play with fire.

(4) She told the children they are not to play with fire.

**8. Everybody says, 'How well she sings!'**

(1) Everybody comments that she sings well.

(2) Everybody says how well she sings.

(3) Everybody tells that she sang very well.

(4) Everybody says that she sang well.

**9. He says that he is very sorry.**

(1) He said, 'He was very sorry'.

(2) He says, 'I am very sorry'.

(3) He said, 'He is very sorry'.

(4) He told me. 'I felt sorry'.

**10. Daman says, 'Priya is working in Ahmedabad.'**

- (1) Daman say that Priya was working in Ahmedabad.
- (2) Daman said that Priya was working in Ahmedabad.
- (3) Daman said that Priya works in Ahmedabad.
- (4) Daman says that Priya is working in Ahmedabad.

**11. Anne said. 'It is time to leave for the meeting.'**

- (1) Anne said that it was time to leave for the meeting.
- (2) Anne told that it is time to leave for the meeting.
- (3) Anne said its time to leave for the meeting.
- (4) Anne said that it was time for the meeting.

**12. The old man said that he would soon be leaving the world.**

- (1) The old man said, "I shall soon be leaving the world."
- (2) The old man said. "I am soon leaving the world."
- (3) The old man said, "I would soon leave the world."
- (4) The old man said, "I am going to leave the world soon."

**6.8 Summary –**

There are three degrees of comparison-positive, comparative and superlative .Paired conjunctions can be used to join two sentences without changing the meaning Depending on the point of view of presentation of the sentence, There are two voices: Active, and Passive There are three tenses in English grammar: Present, Past, and Future. They are further divided into simple, continuous, perfect and perfect continuous. Speech can be reported in two ways: Direct, and Indirect.

Phrasal verbs are important because they are extremely common in colloquial English. If you are not familiar with them, you will find informal English difficult to



understand. A good dictionary has the entries of the phrasal verbs. If you want to master phrasal verbs and consequently English develop a habit to look for phrasal verbs. There are number of phrasal verbs which is very useful to make appropriate sentences.

### **Reported Speech-**

- i) Remove the double inverted commas and use the conjunction 'that' after the reporting verb.
- ii) If the reporting verb is in the past tense then change the whole speech into the past tense. But if the reporting verb is in the present tense then do not change the tense.

For Example:

- a) She said, "I like shopping." (Reporting verb 'said' is in past tense. Direct speech – simple present tense) She said that she liked shopping. (Direct speech changes to simple past tense)
- b) she says, "I like shopping." (Reporting verb 'says' is in present tense. Direct speech – simple present tense) She says that she likes shopping.

**Note- The changes in the tense of the direct speech in other cases.**

### **sentence)**

She enquired whether she can come to my house.

- b) The judge said to the accused, answer the question." (Imperative sentence)

The judge commanded the accused to answer the question.

- c) She said, 'How generous of me to help me!' (Exclamatory sentence)

She exclaimed that it was very generous of him to help her.

- d) "do not do it again please." She told him. (Request)

She begged him not to do that again.



10) He is a better basketball player than everyone else in the team. (Change the degree to superlative)

11) Teacher announced, "I have corrected all the answer sheets." (Change to indirect speech)

### 6.9 Keywords-

- Quoting of the actual speech of the speaker is called Direct Speech.
- Reporting the speech of the speaker into one's own words is called Indirect or Reported Speech. For Example: Leena said, I am helping my mother now."
- Remove the double inverted commas and use the conjunction 'that' after the reporting verb.
- If the reporting verb is in the past tense then change the whole speech into the past tense.
- . A good dictionary has the entries of the phrasal verbs.
- If you want to master phrasal verbs and consequently English, develop a habit to look for phrasal verbs. –
- Phrasal verbs are formed by adding particles with verbs. This particle which is added is either a preposition or an adverb.

### 6.10 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQs):

1. Explain direct and indirect speech?
2. Write down 15 phrasal verbs and explain it with example?
3. Use direct sentences into indirect speech with explanation?

### 6.11 Answers to check your progress

#### Exercise 1-

- |                |                         |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. fill in     | 3. speak up             |
| 2. are through | 4. stayed out           |
|                | 5. takes off / took off |

**Exercise 2-**

1. see them off
2. take off
3. went off
4. put off
5. turn off

4. go off – explode
5. carry on – continue
6. turn off – switch off

**Exercise 3-**

1. hold on
2. try on
3. getting on
4. carrying on
5. put on

**2. Answers of direct speech into indirect speech**

1. (3) ,2. (2) ,3. (3) ,4. (4), 5. (3), 6. (1),
7. (2) , 8. (1) , 9. (2 ,10. (4),
11. (1), 12. (1)

**Exercise 4-**

1. washing up
2. hang up
3. looked it up
4. give up
5. woke up

**Exercise 5-**

1. put off – postpone
2. call off – cancel
3. look up – check

**6.12 References/ Suggested Readings**



- New Oxford Advanced Learners Dictionary.
- English Grammar, Composition & Usage: J.C. Nesfield, Revised by N.K. Agarwal
- English Grammar – An outline of General Phonetics; R.K. Bansal; OUP: 1971
- Spoken English for India; R.K. Bansal and J.B. Harrison; Longman.
- Intermediate English Grammar; Raymond Murphy etc.



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>Lesson- 7</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Comprehension -seen and unseen passages</b>	

## Structure of Lesson

### 7.1 Learning Objective

### 7.2 Introduction

### 7.3 Main Body of the Text

### 7.4 Unseen Passages

### 7.5 Seen Passages

### 7.6 Check Your Progress

### 7.7 Summary

### 7.8 Keywords

### 7.9 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)

### 7.10 Answers to Check Your Progress

### 7.11 References /Suggested Readings

## 7.1 Learning Objectives

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- This unit helps you to understand the concept of comprehension.



- It presents the concepts of ideas, facts, agreement, purpose, tone and attitude
- Explain seen and unseen passages
- Give answers based on unseen passages
- Give answers based on seen passages.

## **7.2 Introduction**

Comprehension of an unseen passage means a complete and thorough understanding of the passage. The main object of comprehension is to test one's ability to grasp the meaning of a given passage properly and also one's ability to answer, in one's own words, the questions based on the passage. A variety of questions like short answer type questions, completion of incomplete sentences, filling the blanks with appropriate words and exercises based on vocabulary are set forth for the purpose. Before attempting to answer the questions on a passage, it is necessary to read the passage again and again so that a general idea of the subject of the passage becomes clear. Once the passage is clear, it is easy to answer the answers of the questions.

One should also keep the following points in mind before answering the questions set on a given passage:

1. Read the passage quickly to have some general idea of the subject matter.
2. Read the passage again and underline the important points.
3. Read the questions and try to know what has been asked.
4. Read the passage again and underline the portions where the probable answers may be available.
5. Use, as far as possible, your own words to answer the questions in a precise and brief way.





6. Always use complete sentences while answering a question.
7. If you are asked to give the meaning of some words or phrases, try to express your idea, in your own words, as clearly as possible.
8. Don't give your own opinions or comments about anything unless you are asked to do so.

### 7.3 Main Body of the Text

### 7.4 Unseen Passages

#### Passage 1

**Read the following passages carefully and answer the questions set below:**

There is a story of a woman who thought She had a right to do what she liked. One day, this gentlelady was walking along a busy road, spinning her walking-stick round and round in her hand, and was trying to look important. A man walking behind her' objected You ought not to spin your walking-stick round and round like that!" She said. "I am free to do what I like with my walking-stick," argued the gentlewoman.

'Of course, you are," said the other man, "but you ought to know that your freedom ends where my nose begins." The story tells us that we can enjoy our rights and our freedom only if they do not interfere with other people's rights and freedom.

#### Questions-

1. Why was the gentle woman on the road moving his walking stick round and round?
2. Who objected her?
3. What argument did the lady give?
4. Was the other satisfied with argument?
5. What did she say in reply?



6. Complete the following statements with the correct options:

A. The gentle woman was walking along a.....

- (i) lonely road.
- (ii) busy road.
- (iii) narrow road.

B. The gentle woman was .....

- (i) running along the road.
- (ii) disturbing others on the road.
- (iii) spinning his walking-stick round and round.

C. The man who protested was a.....

- (i) teacher.
- (ii) passer-by.
- (iii) policeman.

7. Write True or False against each of the following statements:

- (a) The gentlewoman was spinning the walking-stick round and round in his hand to drive away the dogs.
- (b) The gentlewoman was walking along a busy road.
- (c) The man walking behind praised her action.
- (d) The gentle woman thought that she had a right to do whatever she liked.
- (e) We can enjoy our rights and freedom even if it interferes with other people's rights and freedom.

8. Give synonyms of the following words:

- (a) Spinning



(b) Interfere

**Answers**

1. The gentlewoman on the road was moving her walking stick round and round because she wanted to look important.
2. A woman walking behind him objected her.
3. The gentle woman argued that he was free to do what liked with her walking-stick.
4. No, the other woman was not satisfied with his argument.
5. The other man said that he ought to know that her (the gentlewoman's) freedom ends where her (the passer-by's) nose begins.
6. A (ii), B. (iii), C. (ii)
7. (a) false, (b) true, (c) false, (d) true, (e) false.
8. (a) Spinning—Moving (b) Interfere—Meddle

**Passage 2**

On August 15, 1947, India was granted independence from British colonial dominance. This was an event of international significance. From this day onwards, the Indian Union assumed a role in world politics that was appropriate enough to modify the

thinking of nations. Concepts like non-alignment, tolerance, non-violence and peaceful co-existence were introduced by India into the international vocabulary. 'Our dreams concern India', said the first Prime Minister of the country, Pt Jawaharlal Nehru, on the eve of achieving freedom, "but they also concern the whole world, for the world has become one." Mahatma Gandhi chose Nehru to become the first PM of independent India. With his vision of unity of the nation, he became the



architect of modern India. It was to be a federal state based on secularism- the commitment to an Indian identity, which was above all races, castes, and religions. It was a vision of extraordinary dimensions. Nehru as well as his daughter and successor, Indira Gandhi, were well aware that only a firm anchorage in the Indian identity could unite the nation

and enable it to make an impact on the world. In these days of mutual interdependence, the western powers and America cannot afford to ignore what is happening in this region. It is possible that the fate of the Asian democracies would one day be decided on the banks of the Ganges. If India fails to remain a democracy, this

would trigger the fall of the whole of South and Southeast Asia. That is why the Indian Prime Minister has to play a role that goes well beyond duties related to internal affairs only. It is of international political significance.

1) What made Pt. Nehru the architect of modern India?

Ans. due to his vision of the unity of the nation.

2) Which concepts have been introduced by India into the international vocabulary?

Ans. non-alignment, tolerance, non-violence and peaceful coexistence

3) Which word in the passage describes the phrase to live together with mutual tolerance?

Ans. co-existence

4) Which word describes the word 'trigger' used in the passage?

Ans. aggravate (Give choices)

5) Select the word synonymous to Dimensions

(a) support (b) size (c) importance (d) height

Ans.(b)



6) Why does the role of the Indian Prime Minister go beyond the duties related to the internal affairs of the country?

Ans. because these are the days of mutual interdependence and the fate of Asian democracies depends upon India.

7) Select the word that is opposite in meaning to dominance used in the passage

(a) government (b) rule (c) subordination (d) importance

Ans. (c)

8) Give a suitable title to the passage.

Ans. Role of the Indian PM (any other title will do)

9) How can India make an impact on the world?

Ans.- a firm anchorage in the Indian identity.

10) How does the passage define secularism?

Ans. the commitment to an Indian identity which was above all races, castes and religions.

### **Passage 3**

#### **Wild Life and Forest Conservation**

India plays an important role in wildlife conservation. The love for wildlife is a part of Indian culture. It is a densely populated country and people have different religions with their own faith in God. The people think that different animals are related to different gods, which ensure their conservation. The wildlife means all organisms living in their natural habitat. The concern for wildlife is concern for man himself. Because all the species are interrelated, for example, in an ecosystem if the number of a particular species increases or decreases, whole ecosystem is disturbed or imbalanced. So, in addition to the economic importance, the wildlife balances



population and maintains food chain and natural cycle. Therefore, it helps to preserve environment as a self- sustaining system.

The wildlife is conserved by conservation of forests and at present by latest gene technologies. Many programs are held today in the field of agriculture, animal husbandry and fishery. Plant breeders are also able to produce high yielding and disease resistant varieties. The genes of animal are also stored in the gene libraries. The cloning is also there and there are more chances of cloning in future. Thus, man has a responsibility for conservation of wildlife with help of In-situ and Ex-situ conservation. In-situ conservation is primarily related to the natural biodiversity within the evolutionary dynamic ecosystems of the original habitat or natural environment. It is best, easiest, most advantageous, besides being most feasible method to conserve biological diversity. In-situ conservation includes a comprehensive system of protective areas. These include National Parks Sanctuaries, Nature Reserves, Cultural Landscapes, Biosphere reserves and several others.

Ex-situ conservation is conservation outside their habitats by perpetuating sample populations in genetic resource centers, zoo, botanical gardens, culture collections etc, or in the form of gene pools and storage for fish, germplasm banks for seeds, pollen, semen, ova, cells etc.

**On the basis of your reading of the above passage, answer the following questions.**

- (a) How do the Indian religions and culture help in the protection of wild life?
- (b) How are the different species related to one another?
- (c) What is meant by in-situ conservation?
- (d) What is ex-situ conservation?
- (e) Frame two questions on the basis of the underlined part of the passage.
- (f) Find the correct options to complete the given sentences:



(A) Forests can help in ...

- (i) the production of high yielding and disease resistant variety.
- (ii) ex-situ conservation.
- (iii) in-situ conservation.
- (iv) cloning of animals.

(B) Ex-situ conservation means ...

- (i) conservation of wildlife in natural environment.
- (ii) conservation of wildlife outside its natural environment.
- (iii) perpetuation of a large number of animals.
- (iv) Biosphere Reserves.

(g) Use the words 'concern' and 'chain' as verbs.

(h) Find words in the passage which mean the opposite of the following: -

(i) destruction (para 1) (ii) prone (para

**Answers**

- (a) The love of wildlife is a part of Indian culture. Moreover, the people think that different animals are related to different gods. Thus, Indian religions and culture help in the protection of wildlife.
- (b) Different species are related to one another in an ecosystem. If the number of a species increases or decreases, the whole system is disturbed.
- (c) In-situ conservation means the conservation of the species within the ecosystems of the original habitat. It is the best, easiest and most advantageous. It is also the most feasible method to conserve biological diversity.



- (d) Ex-situ conservation is the conservation outside the habitats of the animals. It is done by perpetuating sample population in genetic resource centers. Many species have been kept alive solely through these facilities.
- (e) (i) Why is it necessary to worry about wildlife?  
(ii) Why is every species very important?
- (f) (A) (i) in-situ conservation.  
(B) (ii) conservation of wildlife outside its natural environment.
- (g) Concern: Drug abuse concerns us all.  
Chain: The convict was chained.
- (h) (I) conservation (ii) resistant.

**Passage 4**

An important aspect of the growth of modern towns and cities is the increasing population density. Mr. J. P. Orr, the Honourable Chairman of the Mumbai Improvement Trust, pointed out in a recent lecture on the subject, how it affected the health and prosperity of the inhabitants. Life in most thriving towns is intimately connected with the local trades and industries. Unhealthy conditions in factories and workshops, and offensive trades have been prevented in big towns, and this had led to better health. The question of density is more difficult to deal with in India, because, older towns have been built on different principles. People not only want to live healthy but also live in communities that give them greater social convenience, comfort and safety. They care for the health, comfort and beauty of the town, and these conditions of a well-built and well-arranged town are still insisted on by the people. So as long as individuals obey

the laws of health, and their habits and customs are free from insanitary effects, mere density of population does not perhaps tend to increase the death rate and harbour diseases. But in the present day, it is apparent that the habits of people





have changed greatly and they do not obey the laws of health and cleanliness as well as their forefathers used to do in days when cities expanded and people flourished. It is, therefore, necessary to modify the old plans of city buildings in the light of modern sanitary laws and

requirements. In this lecture, Mr. Orr spoke mainly of the density of the city of Mumbai. But his observations are of considerable interest to all

those whose population is huddled in narrow quarters, without adequate air and light.

1) The density of population does not increase the death rate and harbour diseases as long as... (Complete the sentence)

Ans. People obey the laws of health and their habits are free from insanitary effects.

2) Why is it necessary to modify the old plans of city buildings?

Ans. Because the habits of people have greatly changed and they do not obey the health laws.

3) Life in most thriving towns is connected with ... (Complete the sentence)

Ans. local trade and industry.

4) In addition to health what do the people want in towns?

Ans. social convenience, comforts and safety.

5) What has led to better health in big towns?

Ans. prevention of unhealthy conditions in factories and workshops.

6) What should be kept in mind while modifying the old plans of city buildings?

Ans. Modern sanitary laws and requirements.



7) The word 'thriving' in the above passage means a) populated b) modern c) growing d) well planned

Ans. c)

8) Select a synonym for 'to huddle' a) grow b) heaped together c) scatter d) sporadic

Ans. b)

9) Select the right antonym for 'to harbour' a) shelter b) cherish c) banish d) infectious

Ans. b)

10) Which city did Mr. Orr spoke of?

Ans. Mumbai

### **7.5 Seen Passages**

#### **Passage 1.**

**Read the following paragraph and answer the questions given below:**

Among the chief sources of education available to Tagore, was, a quiet garden adjoining his family house. Here he used to spend much of his time, absorbing the peace and beauty of nature. It was through this early contact with nature that he acquired the serenity of mood that distinguished him all his life. It was in this garden that he came to understand the principle of harmony that was at work throughout the Universe. At the same time, he formed the habit of observing and reflecting on things.

1) How did Tagore spend much of his time in the garden?

Ans. absorbing the peace and beauty of nature

2) How did the garden near Tagore's house serve him?

Ans. as a chief source of education

3) What did Tagore come to understand about universe?



Ans. The principle of harmony.

4) Give the antonym of ..

a) ugliness

b) chaos from the passage

Ans. a) beauty b) harmony

5) Give a suitable title

**Ans. Tagore A Nature** [Answer can vary]

### **Passage 2**

Human intelligence is too vast and subtle a phenomenon to be reduced to a trio of digits. It's even hard to say what we mean by smart. The world is full of brilliant poets who can't balance a cheque book, and genius physician incapable of driving a manual-shift car. Understanding social cues, creating works of art and spawning inventions are all crucial mental tasks that bear little relationship to how well a person can fill a printed test form. It's worth remembering too that IQ isn't quite the same thing as intelligence. As Stephen Jay Gould pointed out in his 1983 book, *The Mismeasure of Man*, the mere fact that we can consistently measure something, in this case, IQ doesn't mean that it has any significance or correspondence to any intuitive, man-on-the-street concept. By way of analogy, if we measured everybody's height and divided it by his or her weight, we could come up with a heaviness quotient-'HQ'. After years of research, we might find that Europeans are slimmer than Chinese, get more exercise or are more robust in some vague, undefined way. Without additional information we couldn't tell. Likewise, a person's measured IQ may relate only indirectly to a layman's notion of being smart.

**Based on your reading of the above passage, answer the following questions as briefly as**

**Possible.**



- (a) Why is it difficult to define Smartness?
- (b) Give two examples from the passage of work which the author calls 'Crucial mental tasks.'
- (c) Give in your words Stephen Jay's view about IQ.
- (d) How far is a common man's notion of intelligence related to IQ?
- (e) Find words from the passage which mean the same as the following:
- (i) rarefied (ii) decisive.

**Answers-**

- (a) Smartness is a vague term. Some people may be capable of doing great things but incapable of doing things that many common men can easily do. So, it is very difficult to define smartness.
- (b) The two examples are:
- (i) creating works of art (ii) making inventions.
- (c) Stephen Jay believes that IQ is not the same thing as the common man's concept of intelligence.
- (d) The common man's notion of intelligence is only vaguely related to IQ. The truth is that these two things are quite different from each other. (e) (i) subtle (ii) crucial.

**Passage 3**

There is only one natural satellite—the Moon. But there are many man-made or artificial satellites revolving around the Earth. Aryabhata, IRS-IB and INSAT-2A are some Indian artificial satellites. They are more than 300 km away from the Earth. At this height, the Earth's gravity and atmosphere do not affect them. Artificial satellites are of many kinds. Of them, weather satellites send information and pictures of clouds, storms and ocean currents. They are used to predict the weather. This information is also used to warn people about storms, floods, forest fires, etc.



Communication satellites are used to transmit telephone conversation and TV programmes across the Earth. They are helpful in sending messages through fax machines, using mobile phones and the internet. Science satellites send information about outer space. Astronomers study this data and get to know more about things in space. These satellites are launched into space by rockets. Once beyond the Earth's gravity and atmosphere, they are sent circling around the Earth by the force of another rocket. There is nothing in space to obstruct the path or speed of these satellites. So they continue to keep going around the Earth, just like the Moon.

1. Answer the following questions briefly

- (a) How are artificial satellites launched into space?
- (b) Why are artificial satellites kept at a distance of more than 300 km away from the Earth?
- (c) Mention any two kinds of artificial satellites.
- (d) How is the information sent by communication satellites used?
- (e) Find words from the passage which mean the same as the following:
  - (i) unnatural
  - (ii) forecast.

2. Find words/phrases from the passage which mean the same as the following:

- (a) facts/things certainly known (and from which conclusions may be drawn)
- (b) set in motion/space
- (c) block up/put something in the way of

### 7.6 Check your progress-

**Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below.**

#### Passage 1.

Among the chief sources of education available to Tagore, was, a quiet garden adjoining his family house. Here he used to spend much of his time, absorbing the



peace and beauty of nature. It was through this early contact with nature that he acquired the serenity of mood that distinguished him all his life. It was in this garden that he came to understand the principle of harmony that was at work throughout the Universe. At the same time, he formed the habit of observing and reflecting on things.

- 1) How did Tagore spend much of his time in the garden?
- 2) How did the garden near Tagore's house serve him?
- 3) What did Tagore come to understand about universe?
- 4) Give the antonym of
  - a) ugliness
  - b) chaos from the passage?
- 5) Give a suitable title?

**Passage -2**

On August 15, 1947, India was granted independence from British colonial dominance. This was an event of international significance. From this day onwards, the Indian Union assumed a role in world politics that was appropriate enough to modify the thinking of nations. Concepts like non-alignment, tolerance, non-violence and peaceful co-existence were introduced by India into the international vocabulary.

"Our dreams concern India", said the first Prime Minister of the country, Pt Jawaharlal Nehru, on the eve of achieving freedom, "but they also concern the whole world, for the world has become one." Mahatma Gandhi chose Nehru to become the first PM of independent India. With his vision of unity of the nation, he became the architect of modern India. It was to be a federal state based on secularism - the commitment to an Indian identity, which was above all races, castes, and religions.

It was a vision of extraordinary dimensions. Nehru as well as his daughter and successor, Indira Gandhi, were well aware that only a firm anchorage in the Indian identity could unite the nation and enable it to make an impact on the world. In



these days of mutual interdependence, the western powers and America cannot afford to ignore what is happening in this region. It is possible that the fate of the Asian democracies would one day be decided on the banks of the Ganges. If India fails to remain a democracy, this would trigger the fall of the whole of South and Southeast Asia. That is why the Indian Prime Minister has to play a role that goes well beyond duties related to internal affairs only. It is of international political significance.

- 1) What made Pt. Nehru the architect of modern India?
- 2) Which concepts have been introduced by India into the international vocabulary?
- 3) Which word in the passage describes the phrase to live together with mutual tolerance?
- 4) Which word describes the word 'trigger' used in the passage?
- 5) Select the word synonymous to Dimensions?  
(a) support (b) size (c) importance (d) height
- 6) Why does the role of the Indian Prime Minister go beyond the duties related to the internal affairs of the country?
- 7) Select the word that is opposite in meaning to dominance used in the passage?  
(a) government (b) rule (c) subordination (d) importance
- 8) Give a suitable title to the passage?
- 9) How can India make an impact on the world?
- 10) How does the passage define secularism?

### Passage- 3

**Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below.**

An important aspect of the growth of modern towns and cities is the increasing population density. Mr. J. P. Orr, the Honourable Chairman of the Mumbai



Improvement Trust, pointed out in a recent lecture on the subject, how it affected the health and prosperity of the inhabitants. Life in most thriving towns is intimately connected with the local trades and industries. Unhealthy conditions in factories and workshops, and offensive trades have been prevented in big towns, and this had led to better health. The question of density is more difficult to deal with in India, because, older towns have been built on different principles. People not only want to live healthy but also live in communities that give them greater social convenience, comfort and safety. They care for the health, comfort and beauty of the town, and these conditions of a well-built and well-arranged town are still insisted on by the people. So as long as individuals obey the laws of health, and their habits and customs are free from insanitary effects, mere density of population does not perhaps tend to increase the death rate and harbour diseases. But in the present day, it is apparent that the habits of people have changed greatly and they do not obey the laws of health and cleanliness as well as their forefathers used to do in days when cities expanded and people flourished. It is, therefore, necessary to modify the old plans of city buildings in the light of modern sanitary laws and requirements.

In this lecture, Mr. Orr spoke mainly of the density of the city of Mumbai. But his observations are of considerable interest to all those whose population is huddled in narrow quarters, without adequate air and light.

- 1) The density of population does not increase the death rate and harbour diseases as long as... (Complete the sentence).?
- 2) Why is it necessary to modify the old plans of city buildings?
- 3) Life in most thriving towns is connected with ... (Complete the sentence)?
- 4) In addition to health what do the people want in towns?
- 5) What has led to better health in big towns?
- 6) What should be kept in mind while modifying the old plans of city buildings?
- 7) The word 'thriving' in the above passage means?





- a) populated    b) modern    c) growing    d) well planned
- 8) Select a synonym for 'to huddle'?
- a) grow    b) heaped together    c) scatter    d) sporadic
- 9) Select the right antonym for 'to harbour'?
- a) shelter    b) cherish    c) banish    d) infectious
- 10) Which city did Mr. Orr spoke of?

**Passage 4**

**Read the following passage and answer questions given below it.**

At one time in the history of India, most women knew very well how to bring up their infants and they lived a perfectly healthy life, free from diseases. The overall standard of women and children in the country was much better than those of other civilizations of that period. But ever since India was exposed to frequent invasions by foreign nations, life became unsafe and property was unprotected, and people were forced to congregate in towns in such a compact way, that it led to awful insanitation and diseases. The traditional knowledge of domestic and personal health and hygiene was ignored. Women were confined indoors for fear of insults and a train of social and unhealthy dangers followed. It is a problem now, how we can restore the original conditions of healthy and happy life in India. This is a socio-economic problem which needs to be given priority to bring back the original culture and restore welfare of women and children in India.

- 1) What was the main cause of the poor health conditions of women in India?
- 2) What question has the writer posed before the readers?
- 3) How did life become unsafe and property unprotected?
- 4) Why were the women confined indoors?
- 5) When were women leading a perfectly healthy life?



- 6) What does the word 'congregate' mean in the passage?
- 7) How are foreign invasions responsible for poor health conditions?
- 8) Write the antonym of 'confine' from the following
- a) forced   b) directed   c) to keep out   d) reject
- 9) Give a suitable title to the passage.

**Passage 5**

**Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below:**

Swami Dayanand was the first to use the word 'Swayraja' even before Dada bhai Naoroji and Tilak used it. The British regarded Arya Samaj as a seditious organization and during the martial law days (1919) students of DAV College, Lahore, were ordered to go for roll call by the police thrice a day. It is now being increasingly accepted that during the Sepoy Revolt of 1857 Dayanand played a historic role, not as a soldier but by inspiring the freedom fighters. It was (and is even now) taught in school textbooks that the Aryans migrated here from Central Asia. Dayanand was the first to debunk that view and assert that the Aryans were the original residents of Arya Vrat (India); now many historians agree with him. Indians told the British rulers: "You quit because you are foreigners." Their reply was "You too were migrants from other lands. Only you came much before us. So first you quit and then we will see." They invented this theory of Aryan migration as a part of their imperial policy of 'divide and rule'. The aim was to put the Dravidians - according to them original residents of this country against the Aryan invaders. Swami Dayanand said: "Ours is not any independent religion. I am under the Vedas and my duty is to preach the Truth." Dayanand in his own humble way said: "I am not a know all. If you discover any error in me, you may correct it after reason and argument." "Anything that cannot be justified by reason and Common sense must be rejected as irreligious - an idea too revolutionary for his age."

- (1) During the Sepoy Revolt of 1857, what was the role of Swami Dayanand?



- (2) What did the Britishers think of Arya Samaj?
- (3) What did Swami Dayanand consider it his duty?
- (4) Which other leaders used the word Swaraj?
- (5) What viewpoint of history books was debunked by Swami Dayanand?
- (6) Which idea of Swami Dayanand was considered revolutionary?
- (7) What role did Swami Dayanand play during the Sepoy Revolt?
- (8) Who were considered as original residents of India?
- (9) Give the Vedic name of India.

**Passage 6**

**Read the following passage and answer the questions given below it.**

It was in Germany and France that the first successful attempts were made to produce an internal-combustion engine driven by petrol. In England people were strangely timid about horseless vehicles. English inventors were handicapped by a quaint old law that forbade any such vehicle to attain a greater speed than four miles an hour, and compelled each one to be preceded by a man carrying a red flag. This law was not repealed until 1896. The earliest motor cars were looked upon as mere jokes, or as rather dangerous playthings, by everyone except their inventors. Some of them were single-seaters, others would carry two or even three people; but all were noisy, clumsy, queer-looking things. When in 1888, Carl Benz, a German, produced a three wheeled internal-combustion car, a great forward stride had been made. Another German, whose name, Daimler, is often seen on motor cars to this day, was experimenting about the same time, and testing a petrol-driven engine. It is easy to understand how the introduction of the petrol driven engine revolutionized road transport throughout the world. Until then the necessary power to push a vehicle along could not be obtained without the cumbersome tanks, boilers and the furnaces of the steam engine. The internal-combustion engine is light in weight and small in



size by comparison, the fuel is burned in it, so that there is no waste, like the dusty cinders of a coal fire.

- 1) How did most people regard early motor cars?
- 2) What made the English inventors handicapped?
- 3) What does 'repeal' mean?
- 4) Give the antonym of 'clumsy'.
- 5) How were the earliest motor cars designed?
- 6) What did Carl Benz design?
- 7) What revolutionized road transport?
- 8) How did the internal-combustion engines score over their counterparts?
- 9) Give a word for 'outdated' from the first paragraph?
- 10) Write a suitable title for the passage.

### **7.7 Summary**

Comprehension of an unseen passage means a complete and thorough understanding of the passage. The main object of comprehension is to test one's ability to grasp the meaning of a given passage properly and also one's ability to answer, in one's own words, the questions based on the passage.

The word comprehension means understanding. Understanding the passage means the following. In every passage, there are three different flows. On the printed page, what the reader physically sees is a flow of words, phrases and sentences.

Underlying these words, phrases and sentences there are rational thought processes which consist of facts, ideas and arguments.

### **7.8 Keywords**

Passage: A paragraph based on the story.

Seen passage: A passage seen by you.



Unseen passage: A passage not seen by you

### 7.9 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQs)

State whether the following statements are true or false .

1. Comprehension of an unseen passage means a complete and thorough understanding of the passage.
2. There is a story of a man who thought he had a right to do what he liked.
3. The story tells us that we can enjoy our rights and freedom anywhere and any type .
4. Differentiate seen and unseen passages.
5. Write a seen passage.

### 7.10 Answers to Check your progress

1. True
2. True
3. False

### Passage-1 Answers

- 1- Absorbing the peace and beauty of nature
- 2- As a chief source of education
- 3- The principle of harmony.
- 4). a) beauty b) harmony ,5) - Tagore A Nature [Answer can vary

### Passage- 2 Answers

- 1 - Due to his vision of the unity of the nation.
- 2- non-alignment, tolerance, non-violence and peaceful coexistence
- 3- co-existence
- 4- aggravate (Give choices)
- 5) - (b)



- 6) - because these are the days of mutual interdependence and the fate of Asian democracies depends upon India.
- 7) - (c)
- 8) - Role of the Indian PM (any other title will do)
- 9) - A firm anchorage in the Indian identity.
- 10- The commitment to an Indian identity which was above all races, castes and religions1)

**Passage-3 Answers**

1. People obey the laws of health and their habits are free from insanitary effects.
- 2) - Because the habits of people have greatly changed and they do not obey the health laws.
- 3) - local trade and industry.
- 4) - social convenience, comforts and safety.
- 5) - prevention of unhealthy conditions in factories and workshops.
- 6 - Modern sanitary laws and requirements.
- 7)- c)
- 8)- b)
- 9)- b)
- 10) - Mumbai

**7.11 References /Suggested Readings**

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. Bhatnagar
- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR. G.S. Mansukhani.



- A Background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications
- Online links:
  - [www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html](http://www.writingcentre.uottawa.ca/hypergrammar/preposit.html)
  - <http://www.dl.ket.org/latin2/grammar/ch34-degofadj.htm>



<b>Subject: English</b>	
<b>Course Code- B.A.-101</b>	<b>Author: Dr. Astha Gupta</b>
<b>LESSON- 8</b>	<b>Editor: Dr. Shakuntla Devi</b>
<b>Introduction to Paragraph Writing</b>	

### **Structure of Lesson**

#### **8.1 Learning Objectives**

#### **8.2 Introduction**

#### **8.3 Main Body of the Text**

##### **8.3.0 Paragraph and Its Types**

##### **8.3.1 Narrative Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.2 Descriptive Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.3 Explanatory Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.4 Compare and Contrast Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.5 Defining Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.6 Classifying Paragraphs**

##### **8.3.7 Persuasive or Argumentative Paragraphs**

#### **8.4. Further Main Body of the Text**

##### **8.4.0 Structure of Paragraph**

##### **8.4.1 Title of Paragraph**

##### **8.4.2 Third Point and Support**

##### **8.4.3 Thesis statement and A Good Thesis**



**a. A Thesis Statement****b. A Good Thesis****8.4.4 Elements of Paragraph****8.4.5 Writing Topics of Paragraphs****8.5 Check Your Progress****8.6 Summary****8.7 Keywords****8.8 Self- Assessment Questions (SAQs)****8.9 Answer to Check Your Progress****8.10 References /Suggested Readings****8.1 Learning Objectives**

After studying this unit, you will be able to:

- Write a paragraph
- Explain all types of paragraph.

**8.2 Introduction**

It is a group of sentences that introduces, presents and develops one main idea about the topic. And it can be divided into three major parts.

**1. The Topic Sentence**

- It is normally the first sentence of the paragraph.
- It conveys the overall point of the paragraph.
- It helps the writer focus on the idea written about.
- It helps the reader know about what the paragraph is all about.



## 2. The Supporting Details

- They are sentences used to support the main idea stated in the topic sentence.
- They give more information about the main idea through examples.
- They say in details what the topic sentence says in general.
- They should be clear evidence that what the topic sentence says is trustworthy.
- They should be strong convincing points on which the topic sentence can rely upon.

## 3. The Concluding Sentence

- It is a reflection of the main idea pronounced in the topic sentence.
- It sums up what the topic sentence and the supporting details talk about.
- It is the closing sentence that reminds the readers of what they have to value.
- It is compulsory for the completion of the paragraph unity.
- It eventually indicates the end of a paragraph.
- It prepares the reader for a smooth transition to the next paragraph if there is one.

## 8.3 Main Body of the Text

### 8.3.0 Paragraph and Its Types:

A paragraph is a collection of sentences that deal with one subject. This is a paragraph—all of these sentences talk about what a paragraph is. An effective paragraph consists of a topic sentence, sentences that support this topic (the body of the paragraph), and a conclusion. The topic sentence in this paragraph is the first one, where the word is defined. Everything after that sentence is the body of this paragraph. The conclusion of this paragraph is the last sentence. When you change the topic, you start a new paragraph—I will change to a new paragraph next, to discuss different types of paragraphs and how to write an effective paragraph. A paragraph can contain as many sentences and words as you need—just be sure that you have said everything you need to say before you conclude the paragraph.



Did u know? Each paragraph should tell your reader about one subject, and should leave them with a good idea of whatever you are talking about.

### **Types of Paragraph:**

There are seven or eight different types of paragraph.

#### **8.3.1 Narrative Paragraphs—**

Narrative paragraphs are often used to describe what a person does over a period of time. A narrative paragraph tells a story. The events in a narrative paragraph are usually arranged in chronological order. These are the paragraphs that tell you what is going on in a story, and move things along.

These sentences all lead the reader toward the idea that a paragraph is just a way of communicating.

**Read this example narrative paragraph, notice how words like ‘later’ are used to connect what happens.**

Yesterday evening I got home from work at 6 o’clock. My wife had prepared dinner which we ate immediately. After I had cleaned up the kitchen, we watched TV for about an hour. Then we got ready to go out with some friends. Our friends arrived at about 9 o’clock and we chatted for a while. Later we decided to visit a jazz club and listen to some music. We really enjoyed ourselves and stayed late. We finally left at one o’clock in the morning. For example -

1. You can own Clyde “Sweet Feet” Livingston’s shoes. Just make a bid. The best part is the money you give for the famous sneakers will be tax deductible since it is going to charity.

2. Latvia is a country in north-eastern Europe. It is bordered by Estonia to the north and Lithuania to the south. Russian and Belarus are to the east. In the west Latvia is bordered by the Baltic Sea. The capital of Latvia is Riga which is located on the northern shore. Forty-one percent of the country is covered with forests. Latvia holds over 12,000 small rivers and over 3,000 lakes.



3. For Sale Eat Plenty of Onions. Good for digestion, the liver, the stomach, the lungs, the heart, and the brain.
4. To make a diorama of the Texas desert, you will need the following materials: a shoe box, construction paper, sand, clay, plastic animals, and cactus. First cover the inside of the shoe box with construction paper to make the sky. Next place a layer of sand to make the desert floor. Plant cactus in the sand. Finally add plastic animals or animals made from clay to your desert scene.
5. July 20 I must leave today for Camp Green Lake. I've never been to camp before. This could really be an adventure. I'm kind of looking forward to the experience.
6. O Sinners, Let's go down  
Let's go down, let's go down  
O Sinners, Let's go down  
Down in the valley to pray  
Show me the way  
Good Lord, show me the way  
Show me the way  
Good Lord just show the way
7. Forecast for Camp Green Lake Clear skies. Low 75°. High 105°. Winds 10 to 15 mph.
8. Reward for the person who gives information to help in the recovery of Clyde "Sweet Feet" Livingston's shoes.
9. A man was sitting with his feet up on a desk. He turned his head when Stanley and the guard entered, but otherwise didn't move. Even though he was inside, he wore sunglasses and a cowboy hat. he also held a can of soda, and the sight of it made Stanley even more aware of his own thirst.



10. Number One Bully Service Derrick Dunne Bully I will help you get the job done .  
Toilets are my specialty.

### 8.3.2 Descriptive Paragraphs—

These paragraphs give descriptions of something so that you can form a mental image of what is going on. It let the reader touch, taste, see, hear and smell what you are describing. The reader should feel as if they can see what you are describing clearly. You want to paint a picture as you write the descriptive paragraph.

Here are a few guidelines to help you write a great descriptive paragraph.

- Describe particular smells and tastes in the paragraph. Use the most descriptive words possible to allow the reader to smell or taste what you are describing. For example: “The homemade cookies filled the air with the scent of warm chocolate, and the chocolate morsels filled your mouth with the taste of cocoa.”
- Add the senses of touch and hearing to your paragraph wherever possible. Describe certain textures and sounds. For example: “The silk garment felt smooth and fluid over my skin, and it had the sound of a gentle breeze.”
- Use similes and metaphors when you write your descriptive paragraph. These literary devices strengthen your paragraph if used properly.
- Insert descriptive adjectives to modify your nouns. Don’t just say “blue ocean.” Describe the actual colours you see in the ocean. Use more descriptive words such as aquamarine or indigo to describe the shade.
- Try personification to give human characteristics to inanimate objects. For example: “The tree stood proudly with her arms stretching toward the sky.”
- Be sure to make your paragraph long enough to give an adequate description. Describe the scene or object in as many ways as you can, but check that your paragraph is coherent.

Here is an example of a descriptive paragraph:



I am sixty years old, rather tall and I have blue eyes and short black hair. I wear casual clothes as I teach students in a relaxed atmosphere. I enjoy my job because I get to meet and help so many different people from all over the world. During my spare time, I like playing tennis which I play at least three times a week. I also love listening to classical music and I must admit that I spend a lot of money on buying new CDs! I live in a pretty seaside town on the Italian coast. I enjoy eating great Italian food and laughing with the likable people who live here.

**Answer these questions about yourself.**

- How old are you?
- What do you look like?
- What kind of clothes do you wear? Why?
- What kind of job do you do? Do you like it?
- What are your favourite hobbies? Why do you like them?
- Where do you live?
- Do you like living there? Why or why not?

**Answer (Exercise 1)**

- I am forty years old.
- I teach students. It means that I am teacher.
- I wear casual clothes as I teach students in a relaxed atmosphere.
- I do teach. I enjoy my job because I get to meet and help so many different people from all over the world.
- My hobbies are playing tennis, listening classical music and buying new CDs.
- I live in a pretty seaside town on the Italian coast.



- I like to live there because I enjoy eating great Italian food and laughing with the likable people who live here.

### 8.3.3 Explanatory Paragraphs—

This is sometimes divided into “Explaining With Examples” and “Explaining a Process”. Either way, these paragraphs provide an explanation for something, so that you can understand it better. This whole paragraph is an explanatory one!

In order to write a paragraph, first you think about what you want to say. Pretend that you are explaining things to your friends, or to a younger person. Try to explain in simple terms that are easy to follow. Once you have thought about it, start writing down what you would say out loud. That’s all you need to do to write a paragraph.

### 8.3.4 Compare and Contrast Paragraphs—

These are the paragraphs that give similarities and differences between things. Paragraphs are like conversations. Each conversation is a series of statements, questions, or explanations that pass along information. Each paragraph is also a series of sentences that pass along information. A paragraph is different from a conversation because a paragraph can be edited and changed after you write it down, and a conversation can’t be taken back once you have spoken the words.

### 8.3.5 Defining Paragraphs—

These paragraphs give you a definition for some term. A definition tells you what a word or term means. This paragraph tells you what a defining paragraph is, so this paragraph is a defining paragraph about defining paragraphs! When you define something, you want to use simple words so that your reader will understand what you are saying.

### 8.3.6 Classifying Paragraphs—



These are paragraphs which divide something into groups or categories. This entire section is a classifying paragraph which tells you the different kinds of paragraph that you can use!

### 8.3.7 Persuasive or Argumentative Paragraphs-

These are paragraphs that try to convince the reader to agree with something. Writing a good paragraph just takes practice. You will be able to write well if you keep at it! Anyone at all can learn how to write a good paragraph, even if they don't make perfect grades or speak wonderful English. All you have to do is be willing to practice writing, and you can do it! A hortatory

exposition is a special type of argument that is written in specific language. To write hortatory exposition, you use words that focus on the writer instead of on the reader (I, me, mine). You also use more abstract language such as passive voice ("it was done" instead of "they did it") and present tense instead of the usual past tense ("I am in town" instead of "I was in town"). Hortatory exposition is just an argument which is phrased in a less emotional, more passive voice. The way that you write paragraphs is simply to pretend that you are talking to someone. Instead of telling them whatever you want to say, you write it down instead. Here are some good tips for writing effective paragraphs:

- "Tell Them What You Are Going To Tell Them"—writing is the same as making a speech—first, you want to give the audience an idea of what is coming up. This will be your topic sentence, and should give a pretty good idea of what the paragraph is going to be about. A good topic sentence should be specific instead of general, and should convey some sort of emotion—either an attitude, a belief, or a conviction.
- "Tell Them"—next, you write your supporting sentences—be sure that each one supports the topic sentence—if you think of a sentence that goes off on a tangent or starts a new topic, put it into another paragraph.





- “Tell Them What You Just Told Them”—your conclusion sentence should repeat the basic idea of the topic sentence using different words.

You might also keep in mind these additional tips:

- **Unity and Coherence**—Your paragraph should all be about the same topic, without wandering around discussing many different things. You should also be as coherent as possible, use simple language instead of big words whenever possible, link your sentences with bridges (see next tip), and use logical arguments and facts.
- **Bridges**—You can link the sentences and paragraphs by using key words which you repeat throughout your writing, by using synonyms and similar words, or by following a logical argument and proceeding step-by-step throughout. Using some sort of order, such as chronological (time) or structural order can help link paragraphs. The reader can guess what is coming next by knowing how time works, or by following along as you describe items in a series.
- **Development**—Make sure your topic sentence is adequately discussed in the paragraph. While it is possible to have a one-sentence paragraph, you will usually need several sentences to discuss the topic. Use facts, statistics, and details. Cite what other people have said about the topic (remember to use quotes and give credit where due). Give a timeline if possible. Give examples in a story or anecdote. Define terms and explain similarities and differences. Describe causes and consequences.
- **Transitions and Signposts**—you can use words and phrases to alert your readers and let them know what’s going on in your paragraph. Transition words and sentences help your ideas flow from one paragraph to another, and contain phrases like “in addition,” “another point,” or “afterwards.” Signpost words and sentences “point the way” to let your readers know where your arguments and descriptions are headed—a signpost could be a bold word or phrase, a dot or arrow, or even an indentation. Signposts are another way to “tell them what you are going to tell them” and “tell them what you just told them.”



Notes Use a “hook” or interesting fact to make people want to read your paragraphs.

## **8.4 Further Main Body of the Text**

### **8.4.0 Structure of a Paragraph**

**Topic Sentence** To generate interest Yellow-spotted lizards are a deadly States the main idea threat to all humans at Camp Green Lake.

**Details** Introduces Main Point #1 They invaded the area after the lake dried up. First Point and gives information or giving lake dried up. Their bite is Support examples always fatal.

**Details** Introduces Main Point #2 It was a yellow-spotted lizard that Second Point and gives information or killed Kate Barlow. and Support examples.

**Details** Introduces Main Point #3 The yellow-spotted lizards threatened Third Point and gives information or Stanley and Zero while they were digging and Support examples for Stanley’s great-grandfather’s suitcase. The reason Stanley and Zero survived is because they had eaten so many onions that the lizards, who do not like onion blood, did not wish to bite them.

**Conclusion** Restates the topic sentence- With this one exception, meeting a yellowness, often leaves the spotted lizard at Camp Green Lake meant reader with something to certain death. think about.

### **Questions**

- 1. What is the main idea of this paragraph?**
- 2. What is the concluding sentence?**
- 3. What do you notice about the first line of the paragraph?**
- 4. Do all the sentences in the paragraph support the main idea?**
- 5. What is the first main point? second main point? third main point?**

**Activity**

**Decide which group of sentences would make good paragraphs. Write yes or no before each**

**Paragraph to show your answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_

Stanley Yelnats and his family have a history of bad luck. The first Stanley's great grandfather made a fortune on the stock market. The family's bad luck struck him when he moved from New York to California and was robbed by Kissin' Kate Barlow. Stanley's father is an inventor. He works very hard and is smart, however, none of his inventions ever work. Stanley is accused of a crime he didn't commit and is sent to Camp Green Lake as punishment. It seems none of the Yelnats can escape the family curse.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Camp Green Lake dried up and the people who lived near it moved away over a hundred years ago. Now the lake is desert-like with temperatures around ninety-five degrees. Deserts cover one-fifth of the Earth's surface. The only place to find shade is between two trees in the Warden's yard. Rattlesnakes and scorpions hide under rocks and in the holes the campers dig. Deserts do not have many large animals because there is not enough water for them to survive.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Stanley's father was an inventor. He was trying to discover a way to recycle old sneakers. Clatonia Joaquin Dorticus invented an apparatus for applying dyes to the sides of the soles and heels of shoes. George de Mestral invented Velcro. While hiking, he had noticed that burrs stuck to his clothing. He used this idea to develop one strip of nylon with loops, and another with hooks. Making an Outline After taking notes for a report the next step is to make an outline from the notes. Compare the outline below to the graphic organizer from Lesson 1.

**8.4.1 Title of Paragraph****Outline Part of a Paragraph**



I. Deadly yellow-spotted lizards. The main topic is used to build the topic sentence. Yellow-spotted lizards are a deadly threat to all humans at Camp Green Lake.

- Moved to Green Lake after lake dried up
- Bite always fatal Details First Point and Support. They invaded the area after the life-giving lake dried up. Their bite is always fatal.
- Killed Kate Barlow Details Second Point and Support It was a yellow-spotted lizard that killed.

### How to Make an Outline

1. Write a title that lets the reader know the subject of the report.
2. Main topics are listed using Roman numerals and periods.
3. Points or facts are listed under each topic using capital letters and periods.
4. Subtopics are extra information that is needed to clarify a point or fact. They are listed under each fact as needed. Subtopics are listed using lower case letters and periods.

### Questions

Use the outline above to answer these questions.

1. What is the main topic in the paragraph above?
2. How many points are made in this paragraph?
3. Did each point need additional clarification?
4. What do the Roman numerals represent?
5. What are the capital letters used for?
6. How many points were made in the paragraph?

### Activity - Multiple Choice

1. Which piece of information is missing from the outline?

**I. Juvenile Probation Camps Services**

- A. Provide educational services
- B. Counselling
- D. Work experience
- E. Recreational programs

**8.4.2 Third Point and Support**

The yellow-spotted lizards threatened Stanley and Zero while they were digging for Stanley's great-grandfather's suitcase. The reason Stanley and Zero survived is because they had eaten so many onions that the lizards, who do not like onion blood, did not wish to bite them.

Conclusion With this one exception, meeting a yellow spotted lizard at Camp Green Lake meant certain death.

1. Which piece of information is missing from the outline?

**II. Negative Impacts of Youth Being Tried in Adult Courts**

- A. Given harsher penalties in adult court
- B. Little or no rehabilitative programs
- C. Criminal records hard to expunge, erase or strike out
- D. Could be denied military service
- E. Youth held in adult facilities are more likely to return to a previous pattern of behaviour
  - a. Youth at a greater risk of being a victim in an adult jail or prison
  - b. In 2002, 2225 youth serving life without parole
  - c. Since 1999 the number of youth in adult prisons dropping
  - d. In Connecticut, North Carolina, and New York 16-year old considered adults



2. When researching youth being tried in the adult court system which is the least reliable source of information?

- a. a national newspaper
- b. a book published by the National Council on Crime and Delinquency
- c. a government website
- d. a student's journal about life in prison

3. Which piece of information is missing from the outline?

III. What are juvenile boot camps?

- A. Correctional programs for delinquent youth in a military-style environment
- B. Emphasize discipline
- C. Stress physical conditioning
- D. Restricted to non-violent or first-time offenders
  - a. Some researchers have found that boot camp graduates are more likely to be re-arrested
  - b. Staff has expressed concern that too many youths lack the maturity and self-control to succeed in a military-style program
  - c. Research proves that small, community-based programs are more successful and less expensive than correctional institutions
  - d. Rigorous alternative to longer terms of confinement in juvenile correctional facilities

4. Which piece of information is missing from the outline?

I. Description of the Yellow Spotted Lizard

- A. Exactly 11 yellow spots
- B. Yellow-green body



- . C Red eyes
- D. Black teeth
- E. Milky white tongue
- a. Should have been named a “red-eyed” lizard
- b. If you’ve ever been close enough to see the yellow spots, you are probably dead
- c. Six to ten inches long
- d. Likes to live in holes

**Answer Key:****Multiple Choice**

1. a. Youth at a greater risk of being a victim in an adult jail or prison
2. d. a student’s journal about life in prison
3. d. Rigorous alternative to longer terms of confinement in juvenile correctional facilities
4. c. Six to ten inches long

**8.4.3 Thesis statement and A Good Thesis:**

**a. A Thesis Statement:** It is the main idea of an essay. It is often a point you want to argue or support in an essay. The thesis statement explains to a reader the main idea of the essay, and the writer’s opinion on that idea. A thesis statement is usually one sentence. It is often placed in the introductory paragraph of an essay. A thesis statement is a claim that could be argued. The essay will contain evidence and opinions that support the argument. A thesis statement should contain a topic (main idea of what you are writing about) contain an opinion about the topic (what your attitude is toward the topic)

Subject + Attitude = Thesis

**Thesis Don'ts**

- Avoid starting your thesis sentence with In my opinion, I believe, I think, etc. Thesis statements are always your take on the topic.
- Just stating a fact. A thesis is something you plan to make an argument about.
- Attempting two topics at once (even if they seem related). Pick one and stick with it.

**b. A Good Thesis:**

It is Limited

Examples:

Good teachers make Mountain City Elementary a fantastic school. One reason to live in Mountain City is access to many wonderful places to fish. Needs To Be Limited  
The world is a magnificent place to live. Mountain City is a great place to live.

A Good Thesis is Concise

Examples:

Good Mountain City Elementary needs several changes to its facility to make it a better school. needs to be Concise  
Some problems with Mountain City Elementary School is that it needs a larger playground, an air-conditioned gym, an auditorium, restrooms connected to each classroom, running water in the classrooms, and a number of other physical changes to the building.

- A Good Thesis is Specific
- A Good Thesis is Not a Subject
- A Good Thesis is Not a Title
- A Good Thesis is Not a Statement of Absolute Fact

**Practice 1**

Below you will see pairs of sentences. Each pair contains one sentence that would make a better thesis statement. Write T before the sentence in each pair that would





make a good thesis statement. Write N before each sentence that needs improvement.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Sachar illustrates that forming trustworthy friendships is beneficial to the characters in Holes.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Rex and Alan's nicknames are X-Ray and Squid.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ When Stanley asks Theodore where he can find water, Theodore grabs Stanley, throws him down, and says his name is Armpit.

**Good**

Daily writing practice has led to improved writing skills for the students at Mountain City Elementary. Needs To Be Specific Mountain City Elementary is a good school. Good The cost of living in Mountain City is lower than in most other cities in the United States. Should Not be a Subject Cost of Living

**Good**

Good teaching has led to an increase in TCAP scores at Mountain City Elementary. Should Not be a Title Rising TCAP Scores at Mountain City Elementary Good The climate in Mountain City is ideal for outdoor sports, Should Not be an Absolute Fact The average temperature for Mountain City in winter is 34 and in summer is 75 degrees.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Brutality is all around Camp Green Lake, and its harmful results are often shown.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In Holes Camp Green Lake is dry, hard, and hot which symbolize Stanley's feelings of being trapped and sad while God's Thumb is green and fertile which symbolize Stanley's feelings of being free and happy.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ In Holes, the physical environment is a symbol of Stanley's feelings.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Onions signify a healing power in the novel.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Onions - A Food Rich in Sugar and Oil



9. \_\_\_\_\_ Over 3,000 species of lizards live throughout the world with the largest number living in warm climates.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ The Yellow Spotted Lizard in Holes represents death.

## Practice 2

**Read the following report about bullying, then answer the multiple-choice questions that follow.**

A bully is a person who is mean or hurtful to others. Bullies often use a combination of threats and shame to annoy others. Bullies may hurt others physically by hitting, kicking or pushing. They may also be mean by calling names, teasing, leaving a kid out of the group on purpose, or scaring others. Some bullies may even threaten people or try to make people do things they don't want to do.

1. Which sentence is the thesis statement for this paragraph?

- a. Characteristics of Bullies
- b. A bully is a person who harasses a weaker peer physically, mentally, or socially.
- c. Researchers agree that bullying contains three elements: aggressive and negative behaviour, behaviour is carried out repeatedly, one person has power over another.
- d. One form of bullying is spreading gossip.

Bullying is a problem that affects many kids. Bullies may cause a person to feel scared, worried, or embarrassed. The stress of being bullied may even make a person feel physically ill. Having a bully around may make a person afraid to go to the restroom, lunchroom, or playground. Worrying about a bully may affect a person's ability to concentrate on schoolwork.

2. Which sentence is the thesis statement for this paragraph?

- a. Persistent bullying may have a number of negative effects on an individual.



b. On March 21, 1993 Curtis Taylor committed suicide after being bullied for three years.

c. In the 1990s, the United States witnessed many school shootings which were connected to bullying.

d. Effects of bullying People become bullies for a number of reasons. Some are looking for attention. They think that bullying is a way to be more popular. By being a bully a person is trying to make himself feel more powerful. Some bullies come from families in which name calling and pushing others around is a normal way to act. These bullies are just copying what they have learned from home.

3. Which sentence is the thesis statement for this paragraph?

a. Reasons for Bullying

b. People become bullies for all the all the wrong reasons.

c. Eighty-five percent of the time another kid witnesses a bully acting out.

d. People become bullies to gain attention, to become more popular, to feel power over others, and because they are copying behaviour of others. Dealing with a bully may be difficult, but there are some things you can do. Sometimes you may turn a bully off just by acting brave. If you walk away, a bully will be less likely to give you trouble. You may also tell a bully to stop teasing or scaring someone else. Telling an adult is important. Teachers and parents can help. Go to recess, lunch, etc. with a buddy. Often bullies try to get a person alone before bullying. Finally don't bully back. Fighting back gives the bully what he is looking for. In incidents bullies get into trouble. If they continue to bully others, eventually they have few friends. The power they wish slips away. Bullies who wish popularity soon realize that they are labelled as troublemakers.

4. Which sentence is the thesis statement for this paragraph?

a. Several victims have been suing bullies directly.



- b. Many schools have programs designed to teach students cooperation.
  - c. Kids who are being bullied can turn the situation around by trying several actions.
  - d. Dealing with Bullies
5. To gather more information about bullying, the most reliable source would be
- a. an encyclopedia
  - b. a fictional story
  - c. a tabloid newspaper
  - d. an entertaining TV show

#### 8.4.4 Elements of Paragraph

A paragraph should include the following elements:

**Topic sentence** — The topic sentence should ideally be the first sentence of the paragraph and should introduce the topic that will be discussed in the paragraph.

**Support sentences** — The supporting sentences should provide additional information that is relevant to the topic and helps support the argument of the topic. Generally, there are between 2 and 4 support sentences per paragraph.

**Conclusion** — The conclusion needs to be a short, cohesive sentence that concludes the topic of the paragraph.

#### 8.4.5 Writing Topics of Paragraphs

One way that you can practice paragraph writing skills is to introduce paragraph writing topics. These paragraph writing topics can be used for nearly any type of classroom, regardless of grade level or subject matter:

- Write a paragraph about an important person in history. Be sure to address the topic of the paragraph, such as that person's career, birthplace or prominent contribution. Use supporting sentences to expand on the topic chosen.



- Write a paragraph about your bedroom at home. Be descriptive, and use adjectives to describe how the space looks and how you feel when you are in your bedroom.
- Write a paragraph about a holiday that you do not celebrate. Use facts within the supporting sentences to explain the holiday and the traditions that are associated with it.
- Write a paragraph about an insect. Make sure to use scientific data and observations to create strong support within the paragraph.
- Write a paragraph arguing your opinion on a controversial topic. Make sure to use factual information to support your opinion, and conclude with why you feel the way that you do.
- Write a descriptive paragraph about your garden. Identify the plants that are in the garden, and use descriptive phrases to make the reader feel as if they are walking through your garden.
- Write a paragraph providing instructions on how to code your favourite game. Be sure to offer clear direction, and don't forget to use transitional phrases to guide the reader from one step to the next.
- Write a paragraph about a new invention that you would create. Use descriptive phrases to describe your invention and to support the topic.
- Write a persuasive paragraph asking your classmates to help take care of the school better. Offer several reasons within your supporting sentences as to why they should care about the well-being of their school building.
- Write a paragraph describing a recent vacation that you took with your family. Be sure to describe the paragraph in detail, and conclude with what you loved most about your trip.
- One way that you can help students practice their paragraph writing skills is to introduce paragraph writing topics. These paragraph writing topics can be used for nearly any type of classroom, regardless of grade level or subject matter.



- Write a paragraph describing one object, but use all of the senses in your description. Include a variety of adjectives to bring the paragraph to life for the reader.
- Write a paragraph providing directions for how to care for your pet. Describe the pet and include the materials needed to properly care for the animal.
- Write a persuasive paragraph about why you should earn more money for the chores you complete for your parents. Give solid reasons to support your argumentative topic.
- Write a paragraph about a different culture. Introduce the reader to this culture through your supporting sentences.
- Write a paragraph describing your favourite view, whether it is the view out your window from home or a fleeting glimpse of a sunset on vacation. Describe the scene in detail.
- Write a paragraph in response to a recent news article that you have read. Use the topic sentence to address your feelings on the news piece, and the supporting sentences to back up your opinion.
- Write a paragraph about an item that you feel your school needs. Form an argument and support your cause with facts and data.
- Write a paragraph about a special childhood toy or memento. Describe why it is important to you and how it makes you feel.
- Write a paragraph about a recent science experiment that you conducted in school. Identify what you observed, what you learned and what improvements you might make to the experiment.
- Write a paragraph about the career you are considering. Explain why you are choosing that career path, and how you plan to accomplish your goals. Paragraph writing is a valuable skill that your students will use throughout their lifetimes. Regardless of the career that they choose, they will need strong writing skills to get them where they need to go. Both you and your students

**8.5 Check Your Progress-****Question 1. Value of Discipline-**

There's a lot of indiscipline in your school. It is not liked by the school authorities. They ask you, the vice Head Boy, to talk to the junior children about the 'Value of Discipline' so as to make them understand the importance of discipline in one's life. Write a paragraph on the above, mentioned topic.

**Question 2:****Need for Moral Education in Schools**

There is a fall in values in today's life. Keeping this cue in mind, write a paragraph on 'The Need for Moral Education in Schools', so as to make the youth of today, aware of high moral standards.

**Question 3:**

Write a paragraph on 'The Importance of Good Health'.

**Question 4:**

The level of pollution in big cities is increasing steadily. It is becoming more and more important to bring pollution under control. Write a paragraph on 'Environmental Pollution' so as to make the people aware of the factors causing pollution.

**Question 5:**

Reading skills are essential to succeed in society. It is a source of knowledge and pleasure. Write a paragraph on 'The significance of Reading'.

**Question 6:**

Observe the following visual and write a paragraph on the famous personality.

**8.6 Summary-**



- It is a group of sentences that introduces, presents and develops one main idea about the topic.
- A paragraph is a collection of sentences that deal with one subject.
- Descriptive paragraphs let the reader touch, taste, see, hear and smell what you are describing.
- Narrative paragraphs are often used to describe what a person does over a period of time. A narrative paragraph tells a story. The events in a narrative paragraph are usually arranged in chronological order.

### 8.7 Keywords-

**Paragraphs:** A group of sentences that deals with a subject

**Wiki Answers:** It is a site

**Descriptive paragraph:** Let the reader, touch, taste, see, hear and smell what you are describing.

**-Cause:** Something that produces cause and effect, a person, thing or event that makes something happen as a result

**Chronological:** Arrangement of events according to the sequence order of time

**Coherence:** Logical connection of ideas

**Cohesion:** Relating to movement from one sentence to another

**Comparison:** Examining one thing against another to show the points of likeness or difference

**Contrast:** Comparing two things or people to make the difference clear

**Definition:** Giving the meaning

**Developers:** Sentences which support and develop the main idea

**Illustration:** Example to support a point





**Modulators:** Sentences that help presenting different viewpoints.

### 8.8 Self-Assessment Questions (SAQs)

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. Paragraph is a group of ..... .
2. There is a ..... different types of paragraphs.
3. Passages and paragraphs are ..... thing
4. "Paragraph is a collection of sentences" explain it.
5. What is descriptive paragraphs?
6. Explain the narrative paragraph.

Answers: Self- Assessment

1. sentences
2. Two
3. Same.

### 8.9 Answer to Check Your Progress-

#### Answer 1:Importance of discipline -

Discipline is the law of nature. It is in man's best interest to observe discipline in all walks of life. Discipline is the backbone of character. Without discipline, nothing great can be achieved in life. A man who does not observe discipline in life has to suffer. He becomes lethargic and arrogant. He is disliked by all. A student who does not obey his teachers and does not do his homework does not get success. An employee who does not work sincerely in office may be sacked any time. If sportsmen do not observe discipline cannot hope to win any match.

In the army, discipline is of utmost importance. Discipline leads to harmony whereas indiscipline leads to confusion. No life is worth living without discipline.

**Conclusion** -A disciplined person is an asset to himself, to his family, to his society, to the nation and to mankind. Discipline works everywhere. It controls the physical



movements and our morals. There is no sphere in heaven and the Earth where discipline does not dominate.

**Answer:2 Need for Moral Education in Schools**

Philosophers have explained that the main purpose of education is to have a sound character. For this reason, moral education is gaining importance in the field of education. Man is a social animal. He learns social habits like helping people, respecting elders and being polite, during school years. When he learns good social habits, he becomes a responsible citizen. Moral education enables a person to choose the right path. It's not that only teachers in schools can impart moral education to the children, but parents also play a great role by becoming role models for the children. What is moral education? It can be anything which teaches a person moral values and virtue. Values are the set of guidelines that a human being learns to follow.

Nobody is born with moral values in him or her. It is inculcated in him or her by his or her education and experience of life.

**Conclusion** -Therefore, it becomes essential to inculcate moral values during school years as these are the most formative years in a child's life. Education moulds the moral values in our characters. By educating children about morals and the young learner values in life we can make them fit for the society as well as the nation.

**Answer 3.** Health is wealth. Good health is the greatest blessing that a person can have. It is the key to happiness. It is the secret of every happy man. Only a healthy person can enjoy life to its fullest and discharge his duties well. On the other hand, an ailing person is a burden on all. Therefore, we must try our best to maintain sound health. Fresh air, balanced diet, regular exercise, proper rest and stress-free life are pre-requisites for good health. We should drink plenty of water, avoid over eating and should refrain from alcohol.



Most of all, we should have regular health check-ups. We must laugh more as laughing is a therapy and the secret of good health. The care of the body regarding food, exercise, rest and protection against disease, are essential for the preservation of sound health.

**Conclusion-** Life is for living. Without health, life is deprived of not only much of its usefulness, but also its joys and pleasures. Let us remember that life is worth living only by a healthy body, mind and soul.

**Answer:4 Environmental Pollution**

The problem of environmental pollution is becoming more and more serious day by day. The ecological cycle is being disturbed by the people. Man is exploiting nature to the extent that natural resources are depleting. The main reason for environmental pollution is over population and poverty. The increased demand for food and other resources forces man to cut down forests which leads to an increase in the carbon dioxide ratio in the atmosphere. This results in heating up of the atmosphere. This is called global warming. Due to this, seasons are also undergoing a change.

All this forecasts disaster for human beings and other living beings. In order to bring pollution under control we need to conserve our forests, reduce the use of paper, petrol etc. Earth must be saved at any cost for the sake of survival.

**Conclusion-** The need of the hour demands a check in environmental pollution. The government should take necessary steps in this direction.

**Answer:5 Significance of Reading**

Reading broadens the vision of an individual. Bacon wrote in his essay. 'Of Studies'. "Reading making a full man: conference a ready man: and writing an exact man". In shaping the personality of an individual, the importance of reading cannot be denied. A person reads not only for the sole purpose of gaining knowledge, but also to get pleasure, provoke critical and original thinking and to broaden his vision. Reading



makes man a better conversationalist and helps to relieve stress. Newspaper reading has become an important aspect in the life of a modern man.

**Conclusion** -A typical modern man may get his breakfast or not, but he must get his newspaper. A good reader leads a disciplined life. Reading helps him to become a well-disciplined. It boosts imagination and creativity in an individual. He is able to mix well with others and is never alone as books are his best friends.

**Answer 6-The famous personality.**

Arvind Kejriwal was born on 16th August, 1968. He is an Indian politician and social activist. He served the Indian Revenue Service as an officer. He was the seventh Chief Minister of Delhi. He is also the current Chief Minister, having won the 2015 Delhi Assembly Elections. He is the leader of the Aam Admi Party (AAP). Kejriwal is a Mechanical Engineering graduate. In 2006, Kejriwal was awarded the Ramon Magsaysay Award for 'Emergent Leadership' recognizing his involvement in a movement Parivartan, using the RTI legislation. It was a campaign against corruption. He donated his Magsaysay award money to the Public Cause Research Foundation, a Non-Governmental Organization (NGO). In 2012, he launched the Aam Admi Party and defeated Chief Minister Sheila Dixit. Following the election, he became the Chief Minister of Delhi on 28th December, 2013. He resigned 49 days later, an action he later regretted.

**Conclusion**- He apologized for quitting midway. He achieved a sweeping majority in the Delhi Legislative.

**8.10 References /Suggested Readings-**

- Books English for Competitive Exams, By DR. R.P. Bhatnagar
- Unique Quintessence of General English, Edited by DR. S. Sen & Others and revised by DR. G.S. Mansukhani.
- A Background to the Study of English Literature, D.K. Patnaik, Swastik Publications



- Online links:
  - [www.paragraphwriting.com](http://www.paragraphwriting.com)
  - <http://daria-przybyla.suite101.com/seven-types-of-paragraphs-a99946>
  - <http://www.whitesmoke.com/how-to-write-a-paragraph>

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104

[illegible]